

# HEBREW



FOR BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION

Arthur W. Walker-Jones

HEBREW FOR  
BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION



Society of Biblical Literature



Resources for Biblical Study

Steven L. McKenzie  
Editor

Number 48  
HEBREW FOR  
BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION

# HEBREW FOR BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION

by  
Arthur Walker-Jones

Society of Biblical Literature  
Atlanta

# HEBREW FOR BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION

Arthur Walker-Jones

Copyright © 2003 by the Society of Biblical Literature

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by means of any information storage or retrieval system, except as may be expressly permitted by the 1976 Copyright Act or in writing from the publisher. Requests for permission should be addressed in writing to the Rights and Permissions Office, Society of Biblical Literature, 825 Houston Mill Road, Atlanta, GA 30329, USA.

The Hebraica and Hebraica II fonts used to print this work are available from  
Linguist's Software, Inc., PO Box 580, Edmonds, WA 98020-0580 USA  
tel (425) 775-1130 [www.linguistsoftware.com](http://www.linguistsoftware.com).

## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Walker-Jones, Arthur.

Hebrew for biblical interpretation / by Arthur Walker-Jones.

p. cm. — (Resources for biblical study ; no. 48)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 1-58983-086-5 (pbk. : alk. paper)

1. Hebrew language—Grammar. 2. Bible. O.T.—Criticism, interpretation, etc. I. Title. II. Series.

PJ4567.3 .W35 2003

492.4'82421--dc22

2003015640

08 07 06 05 04 03      5 4 3 2 1

Printed in the United States of America  
on acid-free paper



To Carrie, David, and Katherine



## Contents

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	xvii
INTRODUCTION	1
Language and Learning	1
Integrating Exegesis	5
How to Use This Textbook	6
CHAPTER 1—CONSONANTS	9
Final Forms	10
BeGaD KePhaT Letters	10
Printing Hebrew Letters	11
Using a Dictionary	12
Exercises	14
CHAPTER 2—VOWELS	16
Silent and Vocal Sheva	18
Gutturals	19
“Sneaky” Pataḥ	20
Dagesh and Mappiq	20
Vocabulary	21
Exercises	22
CHAPTER 3—NOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS	24
The Definite Article	27
Prepositions	28
Rule of Sheva	29
The Conjunction –וְ	29
Vocabulary	30
Exercises	31



CHAPTER 4—WORD STUDIES	34
Lexicons	35
Concordances	38
Versions	39
Theological Dictionaries	39
Exercises	40
CHAPTER 5—PRONOUNS AND DEMONSTRATIVES	41
Independent Personal Pronouns	41
Suffixed Pronouns	42
Demonstratives	44
Vocabulary	45
Exercises	46
CHAPTER 6—QAL IMPERFECT, PART I	48
Qal Stem	48
Imperfect Conjugation	48
Use for Past Narration	50
Word Order	51
Sign of the Definite Direct Object (לְ or לְךָ)	51
Missing and Weak Letters	51
Charting Verbs	54
Interrogative Particle (אִי)	54
Vocabulary	55
Exercises	56
CHAPTER 7—QAL IMPERFECT, PART II	58
Meaning of the Qal	58
Meaning of the Imperfect	59
Negation	61
The Preposition לְ	62
Suffixed Pronouns	63
Vocabulary	65
Exercises	65

CHAPTER 8—OPENING THE HEBREW BIBLE	68
Divisions	68
Accents	69
Pause	72
Maqqeph	72
Marginal Notes	72
“It is Written” and “It is Read”	73
Exercises	74
CHAPTER 9—NOUNS IN CONSTRUCT	75
The Construct State	75
Definiteness and Indefiniteness	75
Indicators of the Construct	76
The Meaning of the Construct	77
Suffixed Pronouns	78
Finding Nouns in BDB	78
Vocabulary	82
Exercises	82
CHAPTER 10—QAL PERFECT, PART I	84
Perfect Conjugation	84
III-he <sup>3</sup> verbs	85
Vav Consecutive	86
Vocabulary	87
Exercises	87
CHAPTER 11—QAL PERFECT, PART II	89
Meaning of the Perfect	89
Hollow Verbs	90
The Root נָתַן	90
Suffixed Pronouns	91
Vocabulary	91
Exercises	92
CHAPTER 12—TEXTUAL CRITICISM	95
Reading <i>BHS</i> ’s Footnotes	96
Causes of Textual Corruption	97
Choosing between Readings	100
Exercises	102

CHAPTER 13—ADJECTIVES	105
Gender and Number	105
Uses of the Adjective	105
Vocabulary	106
Exercises	107
CHAPTER 14—NUMBERS	109
Cardinal Numbers	109
Ordinal Numbers	111
Vocabulary	111
Exercises	112
CHAPTER 15—VERB STEMS	115
Meaning of the Stems	116
Vocabulary	117
Exercises	118
CHAPTER 16—TRANSLATION	121
Literal Translation	121
Idiomatic Translation	123
Audience and Purpose	124
Gender	124
Scripture	125
Translators	125
Exercises	126
CHAPTER 17—HIPHIL IMPERFECT	127
Form of the Hiphil Imperfect	127
Meaning of the Hiphil	128
Vocabulary	129
Exercises	129
CHAPTER 18—PIEL IMPERFECT	132
Form of the Piel Imperfect	133
Meaning of the Piel	133
Vocabulary	135
Exercises	135

---

CHAPTER 19—HIPHIL PERFECT	137
Form of the Hiphil Perfect	137
Vocabulary	139
Exercises	139
 CHAPTER 20—AUTHORS AND EDITORS	 141
Source Criticism	141
Redaction Criticism	144
Hebrew Style	146
Exercises	147
 CHAPTER 21—PIEL PERFECT	 149
Form of the Piel Perfect	149
Locative <i>heʿ</i>	149
Vocabulary	150
Exercises	151
 CHAPTER 22—CONJUGATIONS OF WILL, PART I	 152
Qal Jussive	153
Qal Imperative	154
Qal Cohortative	157
Vocabulary	157
Exercises	158
 CHAPTER 23—CONJUGATIONS OF WILL, PART II	 160
Negation	160
Long Imperative Forms	161
Piel and Hiphil Conjugations Expressing Will	161
The Particle <i>וְ</i>	162
Narrative Sequences	163
Disjunctive <i>–וְ</i>	163
Vocabulary	165
Exercises	165

CHAPTER 24—GENRE AND TRADITION	167
Genre or Form Criticism	167
Law	168
Prophets	169
Writings	170
Tradition	171
Exercise	172
 CHAPTER 25—PARTICIPLES, PART I	 174
Qal Participle	174
Use and Meaning of Participles	176
Vocabulary	177
Exercises	178
 CHAPTER 26—PARTICIPLES, PART II	 179
Hiphil Participle	179
Piel Participle	179
Vocabulary	180
Exercises	181
 CHAPTER 27—INFINITIVE CONSTRUCT	 182
Form of the Qal Infinitive Construct	182
Stems other than Qal	184
Use and Meaning of the Infinitive Construct	184
Vocabulary	187
Exercises	188
 CHAPTER 28—HEBREW NARRATIVE	 189
Plot	189
Character	190
Narrator and Point of View	190
Setting	191
Style and Rhetorical Criticism	191
Exercise	193

---

CHAPTER 29—INFINITIVE ABSOLUTE	194
Form of the Qal Infinitive Absolute	194
Use and Meaning	194
Piel and Hiphil Infinitives	195
Vocabulary	196
Exercises	197
 CHAPTER 30—NIPHAL	 198
Perfect	198
Imperfect	199
Imperative and Infinitives	200
Participle	200
Meaning of the Niphal	200
Vocabulary	202
Exercises	203
 CHAPTER 31—HITPAEL	 205
Perfect	205
Imperfect	205
Imperative and Infinitive	206
Participle	206
Missing Letters and other Peculiarities	206
Hishtaphel	207
Vocabulary	208
Exercise	209
 CHAPTER 32—HEBREW POETRY	 211
Parallelism	211
Meter or Rhythm	213
Literary Features	213
Exercise	214
 CHAPTER 33—OTHER PASSIVE STEMS	 215
Pual	215
Hophal	216
Qal Passive	217
Vocabulary	218
Exercises	219

CHAPTER 34—GEMINATE VERBS	220
Qal Stem	220
Hiphil and Niphal	222
Other Stems	223
Vocabulary	223
Exercises	224
CHAPTER 35—OATHS	226
Reference Grammars	226
Curses	227
Oaths	228
Vocabulary	230
Exercise	230
CHAPTER 36—OVERVIEW OF INTERPRETATION	231
Locating the Readers	232
Text	233
Literary Analysis	233
Historical, Social, and Cultural Analysis	233
Engagement	234
Evaluation	234
Exercise	234
APPENDIX A—VERB CHART WORKSHEETS	237
APPENDIX B—STEM AND CONJUGATION INDICATORS	239
APPENDIX C—VERB CHARTS	241
Strong Verb	242
Qal	244
Niphal	246
Piel	248
Pual	250
Hitpael	252
Hiphil	254
Hophal	256
Minor Stems	258

---

APPENDIX D—TRANSLITERATION	259
APPENDIX E—ABBREVIATIONS OF BHS	261
Latin Words and Abbreviations	261
Signs	262
Manuscripts and Versions	262
Hebrew Scriptures	263
Books of the New Testament	263
APPENDIX F—SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHIES	265
Word Studies	265
The Masoretic Text	265
Textual Criticism	266
Translation	267
Sources and Editors	267
Genre and Tradition	267
Hebrew Narrative	268
Hebrew Poetry	268
Hebrew Reference Grammars	268
Exegesis	269
INDEX	271





## **Acknowledgments**

I am indebted to many people. I would like to thank my students in the South Pacific for whom I began to write this book. Partly because of my experience working with students for whom English is a second or third language, I have tried to write clearly and concisely. To all the students over the last eight years who have used earlier versions of this textbook I am grateful, particularly those who have pointed out errors, made constructive criticisms, and encouraged me to publish it.

I would like to acknowledge my indebtedness to two of my professors: Patrick D. Miller with whom I studied biblical interpretation and C. L. Seow for many of the concerns and much of the description of Hebrew grammar. I inherited from him a desire to simplify the teaching of Biblical Hebrew and relate it to exegesis. Those who are familiar with Bonnie Kittel's work will recognize that I am indebted to her for the use of indicators and charting.

Charles William Miller was kind enough to test an early version of this book in class. His detailed comments resulted in an extensive revision and helped clarify my thinking about pedagogical principles. I am grateful to my colleagues Eleanor Stebner and Peggy Day for reading drafts and providing corrections and suggestions.

The University of Winnipeg provided funds for copyediting and a research assistant. John Kutcher's hard work and attention to detail improved almost every aspect of this book. It was gratifying to work with someone who had learned Hebrew from this textbook and believed in the method.

Because of the nature of this work, I have tried to avoid extensive documentation. The bibliographies at the end are intended as guides to further reading and documentation of the

sources of the chapters. The Bibleworks™ software was a tremendous help in researching and writing this book. I would also like to thank Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft for permission to reproduce passages and text-critical notes from *Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia* (fourth revised edition 1990, © 1967/1977 Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft Stuttgart) and Oxford University Press for permission to reprint an entry from Brown, Driver, and Briggs' *Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament* (1907).

With so much support and assistance, I am all the more responsible for the errors that may remain and would appreciate corrections and suggestions for future editions.

## Introduction

Why write yet another Hebrew textbook? In brief, because existing Hebrew grammars tend to focus on only a few aspects of language, and studies in applied linguistics show that their educational approach does not work well. This textbook integrates some of the best features of existing Hebrew grammars with a new approach designed to promote better learning outcomes. The first two sections of this introduction explain the linguistic and educational reasons for this paradigm shift. They will be of interest to teachers. Students may want to skip to the third section on the use of the book.

### Language and Learning

Almost all Hebrew grammars use what applied linguists refer to as a Grammar-Translation Method. It originated with the teaching of Latin in seventeenth-century English “grammar” schools. Grammar Translation organizes the chapters of a textbook according to a logical description of Hebrew grammar. Translation exercises at the end of each chapter illustrate and reinforce the grammar rules taught in the chapter.

According to applied linguists, Grammar Translation “is a method for which there is no theory. There is no literature that offers a rationale or justification for it or that attempts to relate it to issues in linguistics, psychology, or educational theory.”<sup>1</sup> Moreover, studies have shown that it does not work well as an educational method. No matter how well they are explained and how thoroughly they are drilled, students do not learn forms in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Jack C. Richards and Theodore S. Rodgers, *Approaches and Methods in Language Teaching* (Cambridge Language Teaching Library; Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001), 7.

logical order of the textbook.<sup>2</sup> In an age when teaching is becoming increasingly learner-centered, the Grammar-Translation Method tends to be teacher-centered. Janice Yalden suggests that “the relationship between teacher and learner is that of the classical teacher-centred methodology.” It does “not dwell on the learning process, on individual needs, or on any of the other considerations that teachers and materials writers take for granted now.”<sup>3</sup> Memorization is the predominant learning method. This appeals to a limited number of learners, and seems out of place in contemporary academic settings that prize critical thinking and recognize a variety of intelligences and learning styles. In brief, Grammar Translation tends to be teacher-centered and has been shown not to work well as an educational method.

The awareness seems to be growing in biblical studies that yearlong grammar courses do not prepare students adequately to read the Hebrew Bible. Ehud Ben Zvi expresses the experience of many when he says that “after finishing an introductory Hebrew course, the intermediate reader often finds that there is still a gap between his or her reading ability and the demands of the biblical texts.”<sup>4</sup> He wrote his textbook for a second year course designed to bridge that gap. Others have added a few exegetical elements to already long first-year grammars. Because of the many new

---

<sup>2</sup> Catherine Doughty, “Acquiring Competence in a Second Language: Form and Function,” in *Learning Foreign and Second Languages: Perspectives in Research and Scholarship*, ed. Heidi Byrnes (Teaching Languages, Literatures, and Cultures; New York: Modern Language Association, 1998), 128–133; P. Skehan, “Second Language Acquisition Research and Task-Based Instruction,” in *Challenge and Change in Language Teaching*, eds. J. Willis and D. Willis (Oxford: Heinemann, 1996), 18, cited in Richards and Rogers, 249.

<sup>3</sup> *Principles of Course Design for Language Teaching* (New Directions in Language Teaching; Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1987), 52.

<sup>4</sup> Ehud Ben Zvi et al., *Readings in Biblical Hebrew: An Intermediate Textbook*, (Yale Language Series; New Haven and London: Yale University Press, 1993), vii.

demands in the curriculum of theological schools, few theological students will be willing to dedicate more time to learning Hebrew. Many students and faculty in religious studies programs may also welcome a shorter and more effective route to proficiency in Hebrew exegesis.

In addition, the theory of language that Grammar Translation appears to assume is problematic. Contemporary linguists have extensively criticized the idea of a universal, logical grammar (largely identified with English grammar), question the centrality of syntax, and generally use broader definitions of language that include things like semantics and pragmatics. No linguistic reasons exist for focusing almost exclusively on grammar.

In contemporary North American culture, it is common for students and even faculty to think language learning is unnecessary to understand literature from another culture. In theological schools, many faculty and students think learning biblical languages is largely irrelevant to theological education. Unfortunately, Hebrew grammars tend to confirm this suspicion by teaching grammar with little reference to wider issues of language and meaning.

Hebrew grammars do show some limited influences from applied linguistics in three areas: the organization of the grammar from simple to complex, references to “inductive” learning, and the teaching of vocabulary in descending order of frequency. First, the idea of organizing grammatical forms from simple to complex was introduced in 1899 by Henry Sweet, one of a number of linguists advocating reform.<sup>5</sup> Thus in Hebrew grammars the noun comes before the verb and strong verbs before weak verbs. However, in other respects, Hebrew grammars retain a logical order. For example, verb stems or *binyanim* are usually taught in the logical order they appear on a verb chart. The problem with this is that the most commonly occurring verbs in Hebrew are weak verbs (to say, to be, to do, etc.) and some appear exclusively or frequently in derived stems (to speak, to command, to make known, to save). The effect of keeping these frequent and

---

<sup>5</sup> *The Practical Study of Language*, cited in Richards and Rogers, 10.

meaningful aspects to the end of a yearlong course is to prolong and make more difficult the learning of real Hebrew. In addition, the detail and complexity of the discussion of each topic often makes even the supposedly simple aspects of grammar complex for the learner. This text begins teaching weak verb forms and derived stems early in the book so that, by the end of the book, with frequent encounter, they are no longer difficult.

Second, some Hebrew grammars claim to be partially inductive because they use genuine biblical passages in the exercises. These are more realistic and meaningful than the artificial sentences of older grammars. By inductive learning of grammar, however, applied linguists normally mean that learners are exposed to grammar before they have learned or been taught it. This is not the case when the biblical exercises have been chosen and edited so that they do not contain anything students have not already been taught deductively.

The third area of limited influence is the learning of vocabulary in descending order of frequency. In the 1950s and 60s the use of frequency counts to structure the learning of vocabulary was an important feature of the Oral/Situational Approach. *Hebrew for Biblical Interpretation* is one of the few Hebrew textbooks that extends this principle to the learning of grammar in descending order of frequency.

Although I have tried to state as clearly as possible the problems with Grammar Translation, I am not advocating the wholesale rejection of the method. Communicative Language Approaches in contemporary applied linguistics are primarily for developing fluency in modern languages. Grammar Translation works against fluency, but has its advantages in biblical studies where scholarly literature often discusses vocabulary and grammar. Grammar Translation is a quick way for some learners to understand and engage in those discussions. This textbook retains many of the best features of the Grammar-Translation Method. Chapters are organized according to a systematic description of Hebrew grammar and the descriptions are clear and concise. Examples and exercises are from the Hebrew Bible and include both narrative and poetic texts. Verb charts are included.

Vocabularies include all words occurring one hundred times or more and are organized in descending order of frequency. The grammar and vocabulary chapters have been kept separate from the exegesis chapters so that those using the Grammar-Translation Method can skip over the exegetical chapters. I have tried to include some of the best aspects of Grammar Translation, and enhance it with another approach designed to provide better learning outcomes.

### **Integrating Exegesis**

Studies in applied linguistics show that people learn a language, even the grammar, better in the context of meaningful communication. One way to apply this in biblical studies would be to have students learn Modern Hebrew either before or during the learning of Biblical Hebrew. For biblical studies, a more direct approach is to integrate the learning of grammar into the meaningful, communicative context of interpretation. The word “interpretation” in the title refers to exegesis, by which I mean the critical methods of interpretation used by biblical scholars.

Integrating exegesis makes the learning of grammar relevant and more interesting to students. An attempt has been made to choose reading exercises from passages of broad cultural significance that will be of interest to both general education and theological students. They are then motivated to continue to use Hebrew and retain or expand their skills. However, even if students take only one Hebrew course, they learn things of enduring value about the use of Hebrew in biblical interpretation.

Integrating exegesis also engages a broader range of learning styles. Students who are less able at memorizing grammar rules and vocabulary may be able to engage critical, exegetical skills. At the same time, for those who do further study, the textbook lays a solid foundation. My experience in combining the teaching of Hebrew and exegesis is that a broader range of students is able to become more capable and knowledgeable in the use of Hebrew for exegesis in a shorter period of time.

Teaching grammar in the context of exegesis also assumes a better theory of language. It is neither necessary nor desirable in an



introductory course to introduce the technical language of semantics, pragmatics, or discourse analysis to do this. Biblical scholars have traditionally discussed the broader meaning of language in relation to exegesis. For example, historical, genre, and tradition criticism discuss the social and historical context of language. Form and rhetorical criticism discuss the way larger discourses join units together to create meaning. Integrating the teaching of Hebrew with the teaching of exegesis, therefore, presupposes better linguistic theory.

### **How to Use This Textbook**

This textbook integrates the learning of grammar and exegesis in order to make the learning of grammar more interesting and so that learners can develop more rapidly the ability to engage in exegesis themselves.

In order to simplify the learning of Hebrew, and make room for discussions of exegesis, this book teaches **indicators**. Many Hebrew teachers have students memorize the Qal stem of the strong verb and then point out the differences in the other stems and weak verbs. The indicators are not all differences between paradigms, only those that occur on almost all forms. They correspond not to all identifying features of a paradigm, but to those few features that experienced readers come to recognize intuitively as indicating a verb form or a weak root most consistently.

The textbook notes exceptions to the indicators that might confuse learners.<sup>6</sup> I recommend memorizing the Qal stem of the strong verb, but thereafter the use of indicators should reduce the need for memorization and get learners reading and identifying forms faster.

In order to begin reading Hebrew as quickly as possible, the organization of the book is according to frequency and significance for understanding. For this reason I pass quickly over Masoretic

---

<sup>6</sup> Even in full paradigms, there are ambiguous forms. In addition, the logical consistency verb charts appear to present is misleading because they often leave out alternate forms.

pointing and move quickly to verb conjugations. Because the most frequently occurring verbs in Hebrew (to say, to be, to do, etc.) are all weak verbs, these are introduced from the beginning. This means that early chapters, like Chapters 6 and 7 on the Imperfect, are challenging because they cover a lot of difficult material. But students usually have more time and energy early in the term and, with practice, these essential aspects of the language will no longer seem so difficult.

As well as being organized in descending order of frequency and meaning, the chapters are organized for easy reference, because people do not learn forms in logical order. In this regard, it is important for students to realize that they do not need to memorize everything in a chapter before moving on. Each chapter usually indicates the most important points, by placing them at the beginning of the chapter or section, and includes many details and exceptions later in the chapter that learners may encounter in reading and need to look up again to refresh their memory.

Because dictionaries are mines of exegetical information, the book begins early teaching the use of a Biblical Hebrew dictionary. For this reason, there is no English to Hebrew glossary and exercises in the early chapters have a few words that have not been in the vocabulary lists, so students learn to use a dictionary. In later chapters, when the vocabularies ask them to memorize the word, then they have already begun to learn it in context. Similarly, exercises include some forms and constructions not yet introduced (often with explanatory footnotes to avoid too much confusion). When students later learn the theory, they are able to recognize its relevance in practice.

This book tries to use simple English and avoid technical terms. Some textbooks contain so many difficult English words and technical terminology that students almost have to learn two new languages. Technical terms have their place. When they are necessary and useful, the text includes a definition with the first use of grammatical or technical terms. The book also lists more technical or alternative names in case the reader encounters these in other books.

While this textbook was initially written to address educational needs in the theological curriculum, I have designed it in a way that allows for use in a variety of different contexts, courses, and approaches. The exegetical chapters and exercises focus on historical and literary methods widely used by biblical scholars in both theology and religion. This should allow for its use by people from a range of perspectives in theology and religion. These chapters are also intentionally brief so that teachers can add perspectives and exercises relevant to them and their students.

This textbook was originally designed for a yearlong introduction to Biblical Hebrew course, but with the growing variety of intensive and short language courses being offered by theological schools in mind. It is well suited to intensive, summer courses because it is concise, uses indicators to reduce memorization, and is designed to get students reading Biblical Hebrew as quickly as possible. If the exegetical chapters were supplemented with exegetical articles and handbooks, it could be used as a textbook in language tools for exegesis courses. Because it teaches the most frequent and significant aspects of Hebrew in the beginning, it is sufficient for shorter courses. Even if a course covered only the first fifteen chapters, students would have learned many of the most important features of Hebrew and exegetical skills of enduring value. The final chapter could then be used to integrate these skills.

In my own development as a teacher of Biblical Hebrew, I found it difficult to give up some of the content of the Grammar-Translation Method by which I had learned, even if it was for better learning outcomes. I was encouraged along this road as I discovered that learners were better able to remember grammar rules when taught in the context of exegesis. I therefore understand that it may be tempting for teachers and certain types of learners to skip over the exegetical chapters. I would encourage you to use them to make the teaching and learning of Hebrew more interesting and relevant and thereby promote deeper learning.

# Chapter 1

## Consonants

The sounds of a language can be divided into consonants and vowels. Vowels are sounds that involve a continuous stream of air with only slight friction. Consonants are sounds that involve closing or partial closing of the flow of air. In English, the vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *y*. All other letters are consonants. Hebrew was originally written only with consonants. You will learn about how the vowels are indicated in the next chapter. The following consonants make up the Hebrew alphabet:

Letter	Name	Sound
א	ʔaleph (awlef)	a stoppage of air
ב	bet (bayt)	b <i>or</i> v
ג	gimel (geemel)	g
ד	dalet (dawlet)	d
ה	heʔ (hay)	h
ו	vav (vawv)	v
ז	zayin (za-yin)	z
ח	ḥet (chayt)	ch as in “loch”
ט	ṭet (tayt)	t
י	yod (yod)	y
כ ך	kaph (kahf)	k <i>or</i> ch as in “loch”
ל	lamed (lahmed)	l
מ ם	mem (maym)	m
נ ן	nun (noon)	n
ס	samech (sawmech)	s

ע	‘ayin (a-yin)	a stoppage of air
פּ פֿ	peh (pay)	p or ph
צ צִ	tsade (tsawday)	ts as in “cats”
ק	qoph (qowf)	q as in “plaque”
ר	resh (raysh)	r
שׁ	sin (seen)	s
שׂ	shin (sheen)	sh
תּ	tav (tahv)	t

In parentheses are approximations of how the names of the letters of the alphabet sound in English. The dot under the *h* in *het* distinguishes it from the Hebrew letter *he*<sup>3</sup> and distinguishes the sound from the English letter *h*. The *het*’s sound occurs rarely in English and never at the beginning of words.

### Final Forms

Five consonants in the table have two forms. The forms on the left side of the alphabet column (ץ ף ן ם ך) are called final forms because they appear whenever the letter occurs at the end of a word. Note that all but one of the final forms seem like pulled down versions of the letter. The forms on the right (צ פ נ ן כ) appear when the letter is anywhere else, namely, at the beginning or in the middle of the word.

### BeGaD KePhaT Letters

BeGaD KePhaT is a memory aid. The six capital letters in English represent the six letters (בגד כפת) that each had two pronunciations in Medieval Hebrew. Medieval Jewish scholars used a dot in the center of each letter to indicate the different pronunciations. This dot is called a **dagesh**. With the dagesh, the movement of air stopped during pronunciation of the letter. For this reason these letters with the dagesh are called **stops**. Without the dagesh, the movement of air did not stop during the pronunciation of the letters. For this reason these letters without the dagesh are called **spirants**. In Modern Hebrew only three of

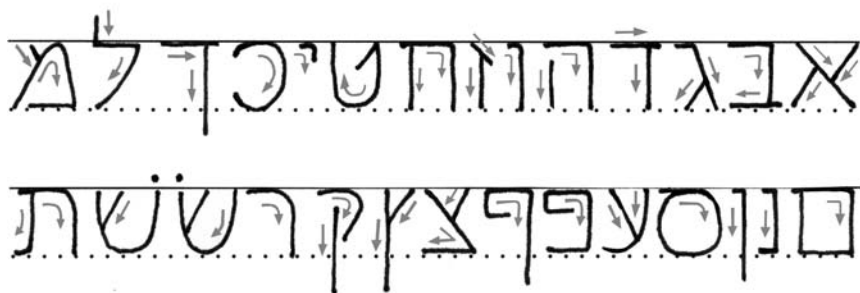
the BeGaD KePhaT letters are pronounced differently (ב כ פ). You might use BaK Pak to help remember them.

**BeGaD KePhaT letters** are pronounced as follows:

With Dagesh		Without Dagesh	
Letter	Pronunciation	Letter	Pronunciation
ב	b	ב	v
ג	g	ג	g
ד	d	ד	d
כ	k	כ	ch as in “Bach”
פ	p	פ	ph
ת	t	ת	t

### Printing Hebrew Letters

Hebrew is written and read from right to left across a page. The reader of the Hebrew Bible also turns the pages in the opposite direction from English. The following is an example of how the letters are printed by hand. The small arrows show the direction the pen moves. Pen strokes move from top to bottom, right to left in preparation for writing the next letter.



Hebrew is printed hanging down from the line. Do not write the ʔaleph as an X. Several letters are easily confused. In your reading and writing, you should be careful to distinguish the letters that appear together in the following table:

ב כ נ	ה ח	ם ס
ג נ	ו ז י ן	ע צ
ד ך ר	ך ן	ש שׁ

One letter extends above the line—lamed (ל). Several letters extend below the dotted line (ק ף ץ ף ן ן ן).

### Using a Dictionary

You may want to begin learning the alphabet and do exercises 1, 2, and 3 before reading this section.

Once you have learned the alphabet, you know enough to begin learning to use a dictionary. One of the exercises at the end of this chapter is to look up several commonly occurring words.

The best one-volume dictionary of Biblical Hebrew is F. Brown, S. R. Driver, and C. A. Briggs, *Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament*. (A **lexicon** is a dictionary of an ancient language.) Although this work is quite old and the authors did not have the benefit of much new information, it still contains an impressive presentation of the considerable data then available. It is a mine of information for interpretation. The abbreviation commonly used for this work in biblical studies is **BDB**.

BDB lists words under **roots**. These are usually three-letter roots. Verbs, nouns, adjectives, and so forth, listed under a three-letter root add different prefixes, suffixes, and vowel patterns to the root. The meanings of all the parts of speech listed under the root are related to the **root meaning**. The three-letter root and the root meaning are an abstraction created by scholars. Speakers of the language would determine the meaning primarily from where and how a word was used. But the root meaning is helpful in learning the language because many words do have related meanings. For example:

דִּבַּרְתִּי	I spoke
דִּבַּר	word
דִּבְרָה	cause
מִדְּבַר	mouth

The three-letter roots are usually printed in the largest letters in BDB. Some letters are susceptible to change with the addition of prefixes, suffixes, or vowel patterns. For example, under the root בוא (go in, enter, come) BDB lists a noun, בִּצְחָה (entrance). The vav has disappeared.

Roots with the same letters in the same positions tend to change in the same ways. For this reason it is convenient to classify roots according to the letter and whether it is the first, second, or third letter of the root. For example, of the roots you will look up in the exercise, בוא, בִּצְחָה, and שׁוּב are II-vav, because their second letter is a vav.

The words at the tops of columns in BDB are the first and last words on the page. When looking up a root, the words at the tops of columns may be confusing because they may appear to be out of alphabetic order. Thus on page 99 of BDB, the top of the second column has מִבּוֹא because it is derived from בוא, not because this is the beginning of roots beginning with מ. Words may add letters to the beginning, middle, or end of a root or omit root letters. For the moment, focus on the three root letters that are in the largest print in the body of the columns.

When you do exercise 4, try not to be intimidated by all you see on a page. Look only at the words in the largest Hebrew print and the definitions that immediately follow them.

As you move toward the end of the alphabet, beware that BDB has an **Aramaic** section at the back.

If you have trouble finding a root or word in BDB, you may want to try using William L. Holladay, *A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament*. It lists words alphabetically, exactly as they are spelled. Because it abridges a multi-volume German dictionary that is a classic in biblical studies, Holladay is a useful resource. However, it does not contain as much information as BDB. In Holladay, the meanings of words are in bold print.

Sometimes the same three letters have such different meanings that lexicons list them as separate roots (with the same letters), usually listed as I., II., III., and so on. For example, in the



exercises for this lesson, Holladay lists I. דָּבַר ... **turn away** ... II. דָּבַר ... **speak**.

## Exercises

1. Practice writing and saying the alphabet until you have it memorized.

2. Read the following similar letters making sure that you can identify them correctly. Practice writing them, and make sure that your writing clearly distinguishes them. For example, check that there is a gap in your he<sup>3</sup> (ה) and no gap in your het (ח).

- a. ב כ נ
- b. ך ן
- c. ג נ
- d. ס ם
- e. ר ך ך
- f. ע צ
- g. ח ה
- h. ש ש
- i. ז י י ן

3. Match the letters in the left column with their final forms in the right column.

מ	ו
כ	ך
פ	ץ
צ	ך
נ	ם

4. Once you have learned the Hebrew alphabet sufficiently, copy the following commonly occurring roots to practice writing and then look up the basic meaning in BDB. In order to help you get started, the first word in the following list (אכל) is on page 37

of BDB. The abbreviation immediately following indicates that this form is a verb. The root means “eat.” (If you glance at page 38, you will see a number of nouns from the same root meaning food, a meal, even a knife.)

יִשֵּׁב	אָכַל
לָקַח	אָמַר
מָוֶת	בָּוֵא
נָתַן	דָּבַר
עָשָׂה	הָיָה
רָאָה	הִלָּךְ
שׁוּב	יָדַע
שָׁמַע	יָצָא

## Chapter 2

### Vowels

Originally, Hebrew used only consonants in writing. The reader supplied the vowels from their knowledge of the language and the context. In some cases, different possibilities could create confusion. By the rise of the Israelite monarchy, at the beginning of the ninth-century B.C.E., scribes were using some consonants to represent vowels on the end of words: ם for final long *i*, ן for final long *u*, and ך for the remaining vowels. The Latin name for these consonantal markers of vowels is *matres lectionis*, “mothers of reading.” In the eighth-century B.C.E. these consonants began to be used within words to represent vowels. From 600 to 1000 C.E. families of Jewish scholars added marks to the consonantal text to indicate the pronunciation. These scholars are called **Masoretes**, and the marks to indicate the pronunciation are called **vowel points**.

Hebrew vowels can be divided into three groups or classes: *a*, *i* (which includes *e*), and *u* (which includes *o*). The chart on the next page uses the letter ך to illustrate the position of the vowel points.

The chart lists only the most frequently occurring combinations of **vowels** and **vowel letters**. Other less commonly occurring combinations are ךּ ךּ ךּ ךּ. The last is an older spelling that *holem vav* replaced.

Most vowel points appear under the consonant and are pronounced after it. The **holem** appears at the top left corner of the consonant after which it is pronounced. If a *holem* and the dot of ך occurred together, then the Masoretes often wrote only one dot instead of two:

יִשָּׁב instead of יִשָּׁב

In some manuscripts, the Masoretes did the same with שׁ:

שׁ instead of שׂ

Class	Sign	Sound	Name
a	ָ	short <i>a</i> as in “man”	pataḥ
	ֶ	long <i>a</i> as in “father”	qamets
	ֶה	long <i>a</i>	qamets heʿ
i	ֶ	short <i>e</i> as in “met”	segol
	ֶ	long <i>e</i> as in “they”	tsere
	ֶי	long <i>e</i>	tsere yod
	ִ	short <i>i</i> as in “lid” <i>or</i> long <i>i</i> as in “machine”	ḥireq
	ִי	long <i>i</i>	ḥireq yod
u	ֶ	short <i>o</i> as in “hot”	qamets ḥatuph
	ֶ	short <i>u</i> as in “bud” <i>or</i> long <i>u</i> as in “flute”	qibbuts
	וֶ	long <i>u</i>	shureq
	וֶ	long <i>o</i> as in “mole”	ḥolem
	וֶ	long <i>o</i>	ḥolem vav

A **syllable** in Hebrew is a word or part of a word consisting of *either* a consonant and a vowel (Cv), *or* a consonant, a vowel, and a consonant (CvC). (“C” stands for any consonant and “v” stands for any vowel.) A syllable usually does not start with a vowel in Hebrew (vC) or involve consonant clusters (CvCC). When a syllable ends in a vowel it is **open**. When a syllable ends in a consonant it is **closed**.

**Stress.** Syllables may be either **stressed** or **unstressed**. In reading Hebrew the last syllable of a word is normally the stressed or emphasized syllable. When this is not the case, this work will indicate the stressed syllable with an accent ( ´ ) until you learn the

accents in Chapter 8. The biblical text has accents for every stressed syllable.

Vowels are **short** or **long**. Vowels tend to be short when they are in closed, unstressed syllables (CvC). They tend to be long in unstressed, open (CV), stressed, open (CV), and stressed, closed (CVC) syllables. Hebrew seldom has an open syllable with a short, unstressed vowel (Cv) or a closed syllable with a long, unstressed vowel (CVC). This is important for various rules of pronunciation that follow.

**Qibbuts** and **hireq** are normally short. They are long in open or stressed syllables. For example, in the word בִּנְיָמִן “Benjamin,” the first hireq is short. The second is long because it is in the final syllable, which is stressed.

The same vowel point ( ך ) can stand for a *long a*, in which case its name is **qamets**, or for a *short o*, in which case its name is **qamets hatuph**. Qamets is more common than qamets hatuph, so the issue in reading is to identify the few times when qamets should be pronounced as a short *o*. Qamets hatuph occurs in closed, unstressed syllables. In the word אָרָץ “he arose” the first qamets is pronounced as a long *a*, because it is stressed, but the second is pronounced as a short *o* because it is in a closed, unstressed syllable.

### Silent and Vocal Sheva

One vowel point, the **sheva**, may be either silent or vocal. When vocal, it may appear in conjunction with other short vowels.

Vowel Point	Name	Pronunciation
˘	silent sheva	none
˙	vocal sheva	reduced short <i>e</i>
ֿ˙	ḥateph pataḥ	reduced short <i>a</i>
ֿ˙˙	ḥateph segol	reduced short <i>e</i>
ֿ˙˙˙	ḥateph qamets	reduced short <i>o</i>

A sheva is **vocal** and is pronounced as a short “uh” sound when it is under the first consonant of a syllable. A sheva is under the first consonant of a syllable when:

1. It comes after a long vowel:

שֹׁפְטִים judges

2. It is the second of two shevas:<sup>1</sup>

יֵרֵמְיָהוּ Jeremiah  
↑

3. It is under the first letter of the word:<sup>2</sup>

יְהוּדָה Judah

In all other cases, a sheva is **silent**.

## Gutturals

The gutturals are א ח ע. The name comes from the Latin, *guttur*, “throat,” because they are pronounced in the throat. Remembering them and their character will help explain many of the peculiarities of Hebrew. With the frequent exception of א, they prefer a-class vowels underneath and before them. The gutturals and ח cannot be doubled (see below). They never take a vocal sheva and prefer composite shevas—ḥateph pataḥ ( אֲ ), ḥateph segol ( אֳ ) or ḥateph qamets ( אִ ).

א is not pronounced when it ends a syllable. That means it does not take a silent sheva. For this reason it is said to be **quiescent** (it goes quiet).

<sup>1</sup> The first sheva ends a syllable and is silent.

<sup>2</sup> An exception to this rule and the rule about consonant clusters are the forms of the number two: שְׁתַּיִם and שְׁתֵּי, pronounced *shtayim* and *shtey*.

**“Sneaky” Patah**

Most grammars call this a **furtive patah**. (Furtive means “sneaky.”) When one of the gutturals א ה ע appears at the end of a word and is not preceded by an a-class vowel, an additional patah appears under the guttural. It is not considered a true vowel. It is pronounced before the guttural. To indicate this, it may appear under and slightly before the letter:

אֵ rather than א

Examples:

רוּחַ	spirit, wind
אֱלֹהֵי	Eloah, God

**Dagesh and Mappiq**

The dot in the above אֵ is not a dagesh but a mappiq and indicates the א is a consonant and not a vowel letter.

Dagesh has two uses. The first, already noted, is to indicate that a BeGaD KePhaT letter is a stop. This is a **weak dagesh**. (It is also called dagesh *lene*. *Lene* is Latin for “weak.”)

בָּבֶל	Babel
--------	-------

The second use is to indicate the doubling of a letter. Instead of writing the same letter twice, the Masoretes put a dagesh in the letter. This is called a **strong dagesh**. (It is also called dagesh *forte*. *Forte* is Latin for “strong.”)

שַׁבָּת	Sabbath
---------	---------

Note: The sheva under a strong dagesh will be vocal. Because the letter is doubled, there are really two shevas. The first sheva is silent and the second is vocal according to the second rule for vocal shevas.

In BeGaD KePhaT letters the dagesh can represent a stop only (weak) or a stop and doubling (strong). A dagesh in a BeGaD KePhaT letter is:

1. Strong when following a short vowel in the middle of a word:

עַמּוֹן                  Ammon

2. Weak anywhere else:

יַרְדֵּן                  Jordan

**Full and Defective.** Several vowel points occur with or without vowel letters (*matres lectionis*). When a word is written with a vowel letter, the spelling is **full**. When the same word is written without the vowel letter, the spelling is said to be **defective**.

דָּוִיד                  David (“full” spelling)

דִּיד                  David (“defective” spelling)

## Vocabulary

After you have completed exercise 2 below, learn the names. Each occurs more than one hundred times in the Hebrew Bible.



### Exercises

1. Now you should be able to read and pronounce in Hebrew the names of the letters of the Hebrew alphabet.

א	אֶלֶף	ט	טֵית	פ	פֶּה
ב	בֵּית	י	יֵד	צ	צֶדֶה
ג	גִּמְל	כ	כֶּף	ק	קוֹף
ד	דָּלֶת	ל	לָמֶד	ר	רֵישׁ
ה	הֵא	מ	מִים	ש	שִׁין
ו	וּו	נ	נוֹן	שׁ	שִׁין
ז	זַיִן	ס	סָמֶךְ	ת	תֵּו
ח	חֵית	ע	עֵין		

2. Read aloud the biblical names on the next page and then see if you recognize them. For each dagesh in a BeGaD KePhaT letter, decide whether it is weak or strong. For each sheva, decide whether it is silent or vocal by consulting the rules. If you do not recognize the name, look it up in BDB, Holladay, or another lexicon. On the one hand, they may be difficult to find in BDB because you will not know what root to look under. On the other hand, trying to look them up will familiarize you with the way BDB often helps you in such situations. For example, if you do not recognize אֲבִרְהָם and do not know the root, but look it up in alphabetical order in BDB, you will find on page seven (almost at the bottom of the second column, in small print) the note:

אֲבִרְהָם v. אֲבִרְהָם sub II. אֲבִרְהָם

This means for אֲבִרְהָם see אֲבִרְהָם under the second root אֲבִרְהָם. Hendrickson Publishers' version of BDB adds the page and column where you will find the root (p. 4b). If you look in the second column on page four, you will find these names are

“Abraham” and “Abram.” Often you can look words and forms up in BDB in this way even if you do not know the root.

לוי	יְהוּדָה	אַבְרָהָם
מוֹאָב	יְהוֹנָתָן	אַבְשָׁלוֹם
מִנְשָׁה	יוֹסֵף	אַדָּם
מִשָּׁה	יַעֲקֹב	אַדָּם
עֲמֹן	יִצְחָק	אַחֲרֹן
פֶּרֶעָה	יִרְדֵּן	אַפְרָיִם
צִיּוֹן	יְרוּשָׁלַיִם <sup>3</sup>	אַרָם
שָׂאוֹל	יִרְמְיָהוּ	בָּבֶל
שִׁבְתָּ	יִשְׂרָאֵל	בְּנֵי־מֶן
שְׂמוּאֵל	כְּנָעַן	דָּוִד

Note: The name Adam in Hebrew is also the word for “human being.” How does this affect our understanding of the story of Adam and Eve?

<sup>3</sup> The defective spelling is far more common: יְרוּשָׁלַם

## Chapter 3

### Nouns and Prepositions

**Gender** in Hebrew is either masculine or feminine. **Number** is singular, dual, or plural. In linguistics, **marking** refers to the addition of something to distinguish it from other forms.

**Masculine singular (ms) nouns** are unmarked. They have no additional ending.

**Masculine plural (mp) nouns** usually end in םֿ-<sup>1</sup>.

מֶלֶךְ	king (ms)
מְלָכִים	kings (mp)

In most cases, the vowels of the noun change when an ending is added. For students who are interested, the rules covering most of these vowel changes may be found in Lambdin's or Seow's grammars. Nouns that do not follow the general rules are called **irregular plurals** and are so noted in this book's vocabularies. Those that add consonants may have originally come from a different root than the singular. The plural of אִישׁ, for example, is אֲנָשִׁים.

**Feminine singular (fs) nouns** usually end with תֿ- or a תֿ-. (The תֿ may be vocalized in a number of different ways.) Various possibilities are represented in the examples below. Historically, the feminine endings all derived from תֿ- (at).

אִשָּׁה	woman (fs)
שָׁנָה	year (fs)

---

<sup>1</sup> The hyphen represents any final root letter to which the ending is added.

בַּת	daughter (fs)
חַטָּאת	sin, sin-offering (fs)
בְּרִית	covenant (fs)

Some feminine nouns look like they are masculine. They are masculine in ending:

עִיר	city (fs)
נָשִׁים	women (fp)

They may have a masculine ending only in the singular, only in the plural, or in both. Although they have a masculine form, that they are feminine is evident in reading because they take feminine adjectives and verbs.

**Feminine plural (fp) nouns** add לֹת־.

חֶרֶבוֹת	swords (fp)
----------	-------------

As with the masculine endings, some nouns may take feminine plural endings, but are masculine.

אֲבוֹת	fathers (mp)
--------	--------------

Both genders use the same **dual** ending יָם', which is similar to the masculine plural form. The dual is limited in Hebrew. It is used for body parts that occur in pairs, expressions of time, and measurements.

Body parts	עֵינַיִם	eyes
Time	יּוֹמַיִם	two days
Measurements	אַמְתַּיִם	two cubits

For a variety of reasons, some nouns have endings that appear dual, but do not have a dual meaning.

A table can summarize the endings that mark the different genders and numbers in Hebrew:

Ending	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	none	הַ— תַּ—
Dual	יִם—	יִם—
Plural	יִם—	וֹת—

The addition of endings may cause vowels to change:

Without Ending		With Ending	
נָבִיא	prophet (ms)	נְבִיאִים	prophets (mp)
חָכָם	wise man (ms)	חֲכָמִים	wise men (mp)
שֹׁפֵט	judge (ms)	שֹׁפְטִים	judges (mp)
אֵיל	ram (ms)	אֵילִים	rams (mp)
אֹנִי	trouble (ms)	אֹנִים	troubles (mp)

At this point, it is not necessary to understand or memorize the rules that govern these vowel changes. You should be able to recognize the word and root without knowing the rules.

More difficult to recognize is when a letter changes or disappears. With nouns ending in a he<sup>3</sup> (הַ—), the he<sup>3</sup> may change to a tav or disappear before the plural ending.

Without Ending		With Ending	
שָׁנָה	year (fs)	שְׁנָתַיִם	two years (dual)
		שָׁנִים	years (fp)

Ideas about what is singular and plural vary within and between languages. A **collective noun** is a noun that has a singular ending but stands for a group or collection of individuals. Army, crowd, orchestra are examples in English. Examples in Hebrew are:

צֹאן	“flock” or “flocks”
בְּהֵמָה	“beast” or “beasts”

One of the most striking differences between Hebrew and English is the use of the **plural for honor** or majesty:

אֱלֹהִים	“gods” or “God”
אֲדֹנִים	“lords” or “lord”

### The Definite Article

The definite article points to something and limits or defines it—this one and not another. (Hebrew has no indefinite article such as English “a.” The absence of a definite article with a Hebrew noun indicates “a.”) Hebrew prefixes the definite article to the word to which it points. The definite article is usually ה־ with doubling (a strong dagesh) in the first letter of the word.

הַכֹּהֵן	the priest
----------	------------

Before nouns beginning with a guttural or resh, the definite article will be ה־ or ה־ without doubling, because the gutturals (א ה ח ט י) and resh (ר) do not take doubling.

הָאֱלֹהִים	(the) God
הָאָרֶץ	the earth
הַהֵיכָל	the temple

As in the second example above the definite article may also affect the vowels of the noun it modifies. אֶרֶץ with the definite article becomes אֶרֶץ.

Before ה־ and sometimes ה־ and ע־, the definite article is ה־.

עָרִים	cities
הָעָרִים	the cities

Note: The addition of the definite article or the addition of gender and number endings to some nouns changes the vowels. As an aid to identifying these remember that BDB and other dictionaries list the gender and various forms of nouns after the etymology.

### Prepositions

Hebrew prepositions may either be **prefixed** to words or be independent words.

Hebrew prefixes to words the prepositions –כּ “in,” “at,” “with,” –כֶּ “as,” “like,” and –לִ “to,” “for.”

לְנָשִׁים                      for women

When the word is definite, the he<sup>3</sup> of the definite article disappears, but the vowel and doubling remain.

לְנָשִׁים                      for the women

Some prepositions such as לְפָנַי “before” are **independent** words.

לְפָנַי יְהוָה                      before the LORD

Some prepositions such as עַל “on,” “upon” and אֶל “to” are typically joined to the following word with a mark called a **maqeph**.

עַל-הָאָרֶץ                      on the earth

אֶל-הָעִיר                      to the city

Some prepositions such as **אֶת** “with” may or may not be joined to the following word with maqqeph. The preposition **אֶת** has the vowel pointing **אֶת־** when it is joined with maqqeph to a word and, of course, the pointing **אֶת** when it is not joined with maqqeph to a word.

<b>אֶת־יְהוָה</b>	with the LORD
<b>אֶת רִבְקָה</b>	with Rebekah

### Rule of Sheva

When a preposition comes before a word that begins with a vocal sheva, the vowel pointing under the preposition changes to a hireq.

<b>לְמַנַּשֶּׁה</b>	for Manasseh
---------------------	--------------

This is the **rule of sheva**: when two vocal shevas would appear together in Hebrew, the first changes to hireq, and the second becomes silent.

When the second sheva is under a yod, the sheva disappears.

<b>יְהוּדָה</b>	Judah
<b>לְיְהוּדָה</b>	to Judah

### The Conjunction –וְ

The conjunction –וְ is always prefixed to a word. Its vowel pointing may be either –וְ or –וֹ. The pronunciation of the first is “ve-.” The pronunciation of the second is an important *exception* to the rule that Hebrew syllables always begin with a consonant. The pronunciation is “u-.”

<b>וַיִּשְׂרָאֵל</b>	and Israel
<b>וּמֶלֶךְ</b>	and a king



Before a composite sheva, the conjunction takes the corresponding long vowel. This is another variation of the rule of sheva.

וְאִשֶּׁר                      and who

The vowel pointing of the conjunction before אֱלֹהִים “God” is unique. The ’aleph goes quiet and the vowel lengthens.

וְאֱלֹהִים                      and God

### Vocabulary

אִישׁ	man
אֲנָשִׁים	men (irregular plural)
אֶל	to, toward
אֱלֹהִים	God
אֶרֶץ	earth, land
אִשָּׁה	woman
נָשִׁים	women (irregular plural)
אֵת	with, beside
בְּ-	in, at, with, on (preposition prefixed to the beginning of a word)
הַ-	the
וְ-	and, also; but (conjunction prefixed to the beginning of a word)

יְהוָה	long form of the name of God. (The rabbis kept the pronunciation secret in order to avoid profanation and either did not point the name or pointed it with the vowel points of a word to be substituted in reading, most often the vowels for אֲדֹנָי, “my Lord,” as you will see in the following exercises. For this reason translations such as the NRSV often translate it as LORD in capital letters and it is normally read אֲדֹנָי in Hebrew.) Short forms of the name of God are: יְהִי and יְהֵא .
כִּי	as, like (prefixed preposition)
בְּ	because, for, that, when, but; indeed, truly
כָּל כּוֹל	all, every (This is one of the most frequently occurring examples of gamets hatuph. When joined with a maqqeph to a following word it loses its accent and becomes כָּל־ pronounced with a short o.)
לְ	to, toward, for (prefixed preposition); Do! Yes!
מֶלֶךְ	king
לִפְנֵי	before
עַל	on, upon, against, over; beside
עִם	with

## Exercises

1. Practice reading aloud the following verse until you can read it smoothly and fluently. Translate the words you recognize.

שָׁמַע יִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ יְהוָה אֶחָד (Deut 6:4)

2. Read aloud and translate the words in the following phrases. In these early exercises, the important thing is that you translate the individual words. Until you become more familiar with Hebrew, it will be difficult to create a translation that makes

sense in English, but you should be able to identify the individual words. In the exercise, you will begin to learn by experience that word order is different in Hebrew than it is in English. In addition, you will need to add “is” to make sense of some of the phrases that do not include a verb. If you still cannot make sense of the phrases, you may consult an English translation.

כִּי לַיהוָה הָאָרֶץ (Exod 9:29)

וַיֹּאמֶר<sup>2</sup> דָּוִד (2 Sam 6:21)

אֶל־מִיכָל<sup>3</sup> לִפְנֵי יְהוָה

שְׁמוּאֵל עִם־יְהוָה (1 Sam 2:21)

אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם עַל־הָאָרֶץ (2 Chr 6:18)

אֶת־הָאֱלֹהִים הִתְהַלֵּךְ<sup>4</sup>-נָח (Gen 6:9)

כִּי מָלַךְ כָּל־הָאָרֶץ אֱלֹהִים (Ps 47:8 ET 7)<sup>5</sup>

הָאֲנָשִׁים עַל־הָנָשִׁים (Exod 35:22)

אִישׁ שָׁכַב<sup>6</sup> עִם־אִשָּׁה (Deut 22:22)

לָאָרֶץ שָׁבַת לַיהוָה (Lev 25:4)

---

<sup>2</sup> “said” (The subject, when named, normally comes after the verb rather than before it, as in English. See “Word Order” in Chapter 6.)

<sup>3</sup> “Michal.” If you have trouble with a word in the exercises, remember that it could be a name. Sound it out or look it up.

<sup>4</sup> “walked”

<sup>5</sup> ET = Verse number(s) in English translations

<sup>6</sup> “lying”

3. Read aloud and translate the words in the following phrases. They contain a few words you have not had in your vocabulary and will need to look up in a lexicon. Again, until you know more Hebrew, you may not be able to figure out how the words fit into English translations. The important thing is to identify the individual words.

בְּיוֹם עָשׂוֹת<sup>7</sup> יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים  
אֶרֶץ וּשְׂמִים<sup>8</sup>

כָּל-אִישׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶל-הָעִיר כָּאִישׁ אֶחָד (Judg 20:11)

4. Some recent grammars argue that grammatical gender of nouns for living and non-living things is primarily syntactical and does not reflect social ideas about gender. Some feminists think that the gender of non-living things often does reflect and support the sexist ideas and practices of patriarchal cultures. English, for example, uses feminine pronouns (she, her) for the church, because the church is thought of as emotionally supportive and nurturing like a mother. This usage is usually unconscious. What do you think? Is gender only grammatical or does it reflect ideas about male and female?

---

<sup>7</sup> “made” (The next two words are the subject of this verb. See footnote 2.)

<sup>8</sup> You will find this word listed in BDB under the root שָׁמַד.

## **Chapter 4**

### **Word Studies**

**Exegesis** comes from a Greek word meaning “to lead out of.” In biblical studies, it refers to the methods of historical and literary analysis of a passage that “lead out” meaning. It refers, in short, to methods of biblical interpretation. Throughout this work, there will be chapters on aspects of biblical interpretation.

In the process of interpreting a biblical passage, it may be necessary or valuable to do a word study to understand the meaning of a word. When translating from Hebrew into English, a scholar may have difficulty making sense of a Hebrew word in a particular context and may need to do a word study. While studying a passage, you may decide there are one or several words that are very important to understanding a passage and therefore may deserve a word study.

A word usually has a range of meanings within a language. These meanings may change over time within a culture. New words are created, and old words gradually stop being used. Different groups of people may assign peculiar meanings to particular words. Because the Bible was written over a long period by many groups of people, words may have different meanings in different bodies of literature and historical eras. Ancient Israelite culture was very different from our own and we look at it from a great historical distance. Word studies are like telescopes helping us to see ancient meanings from a great cultural and historical distance.

Theological terms in English may be very abstract, but have concrete meanings in Hebrew that bring them alive. For example: “Redeemer” is quite abstract in English, but in Hebrew it has a variety of concrete meanings, including a person who buys a relative from slavery.

## Lexicons

Lexicons are dictionaries of ancient languages. They provide the range of meanings of a word and much other useful information for translation and interpretation. If there is a history of scholarly discussion about the meaning of a word, a lexicon often contains a brief summary.

There are two multi-volume lexicons of classical Hebrew. The first by Koehler, Baumgartner, and Stamm was originally in German (with some English translations). It now appears in English translation as *The Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament*, and is often referred to by the abbreviation *HALOT* in biblical studies. The second multi-volume lexicon is *The Dictionary of Classical Hebrew*, edited by David J. A. Clines, and abbreviated *DCH* in biblical studies. *DCH* is influenced by contemporary linguistics and focuses on the meaning of words in the context of the Hebrew language. For this reason, it does not contain references to the meaning of roots in other Semitic languages, but does contain references to the Dead Sea Scrolls that were not available to earlier works.

Hebrew students commonly use either one of two one-volume lexicons: William L. Holladay's *A Concise Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament* or Brown, Driver and Briggs' *Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament* (BDB). Holladay is based on an earlier German lexicon by Koehler and Baumgartner (KBL) and is favored by some because the entries are in alphabetic order and therefore easier to find for beginners. BDB lists words under roots but has more information. The *New Brown-Driver-Briggs* from Hendrickson Publishers adds to the bottom of pages the Addenda and Corrigenda that were at the back of the Oxford version. Both versions lack much new information, particularly the library of Ugaritic literature, and recent advances in the understanding of Hebrew.

Although BDB is difficult to use, it contains much information. Therefore, this textbook provides helps for its use. What follows is a reproduction of the beginning of an entry from BDB. Refer to that reproduction (or page 55 in BDB) as you read the following description of how to use it.

**אָמַר** <sup>5287</sup> **vb.** utter, say (MI Ph. אָמַר, Aram. אָמַר, Eth. አመረ; I. 2 *shew, declare*, Ar. أَمَرَ *command*; perh. √אָמַר orig. = *be or make prominent*, hence Hithp. infr., אָמַר: Sab. אָמַר *lofty*, epith. of king JHMordtm <sup>ZMG 1876, 37</sup>; cf. Dl <sup>Fr 23</sup> who thinks orig. mng. *hell, sichtbar sein*, whence As. *amāru, see, & shew, declare, say*)—**Qal** Pf. 'א Gn 3<sup>1</sup> +, etc.; *Impf.* יֹאמֵר Gn 31<sup>8</sup> +; יֹאמֶר Gn 1<sup>3</sup> +; יֹאמְרָה Gn 14<sup>19</sup> +; in Jb alw. יֹאמֵר Jb 3<sup>2</sup> +; 3 fs. תֹּאמַר Gn 21<sup>12</sup> +; תֹּאמְרָה Pr 1<sup>21</sup>; 1 s. אָמַר Gn 22<sup>2</sup> +; אִמְרָה ψ 42<sup>0</sup>; אָמַר Gn 20<sup>13</sup> +; אִמְרָה Ne 2<sup>7,17,20</sup>; 3 m. pl. יֹאמְרוּ Ex 4<sup>1</sup> + etc.; sf. יֹאמְרוּ ψ 139<sup>20</sup>; 2 mpl. תֹּאמְרוּ 2 S 19<sup>14</sup> (cf. Kö <sup>l. p. 385</sup>); *Imv.* אָמַר (אָמְרָה) Gn 45<sup>17</sup> +, etc.; *Inf. abs.* אָמֹר Ex 21<sup>5</sup> +; cstr. אָמֹר Ez 25<sup>8</sup> +; אָמֹר (ה) Jb 34<sup>18</sup> but rd. הָאֵמֹר וְיִדְּעוּ Di, or better הָאֵמֹר *Inf. abs.* c. ה interrog. cf. Ew <sup>328 d</sup>; sf. אָמְרִי Jos 6<sup>10</sup> +; אָמְרָם Je 23<sup>38</sup>; אָמְרָם Mal 1<sup>7</sup> +; אָמֹר Gn 1<sup>22</sup> +, etc.; *Pt. act.* אָמַר Gn 32<sup>10</sup> +, etc.; *pass.* הָאֵמֹר Mi 2<sup>7</sup>, but this grammatically indefensible, rd. הָאֵמֹר *Inf. abs.* c. ה interrog., v. Dt <sup>Expositor, April, 1887, 203</sup>.

**1. Say** (subj. God Gn 3<sup>1</sup> + or man 32<sup>5</sup>, serpent 3<sup>1</sup>, ass Nu 22<sup>28</sup>, horse הָאֵמֹר Jb 39<sup>25</sup> etc.; inanimate things, personif. Jb 28<sup>14</sup> cf. v<sup>22</sup> etc.; so in allegory or fable Ju 9<sup>8</sup> 2 K 14<sup>9</sup> etc.; esp. in narrat., יֹאמֵר etc., Gn 4<sup>6</sup> + very oft.): mostly sq. thing said, either subst. Je 14<sup>17</sup> (c. cl. app.) Dt 27<sup>16f</sup>. Ju 12<sup>6</sup>; pronoun Gn 44<sup>16</sup> 2 K 20<sup>14</sup> +; or (usually) clause Gn 1<sup>3</sup> 3<sup>1</sup> 37<sup>20</sup>

The parenthesis following the root contains information on the origin and meaning of the word. There are abbreviated references to various scholars as well as the meanings of the word in various **Semitic languages**. The key to the abbreviations is at the front of BDB. Even if you do not know the alphabets of the other Semitic languages, you can use this section because BDB gives the translation.

After the parentheses in BDB is a dash (—) and the various forms of the verb. Do not worry about these now. The numbered sections that follow give various meanings of the verb and where BDB thinks those meanings occur. (This particular entry continues for two pages.) BDB lists various biblical occurrences under each

meaning and you may find the passage you are studying. If there is a sword (†) to the left of a word, this means the entry lists all occurrences of the word. Check other lexicons for different meanings. Various lexicons and translations may choose different meanings. Examine this range of meanings to see what best fits the context of your passage.

If there is a large Roman numeral to the left of the root, then the root has other unrelated meanings. This is important. A different meaning may fit the context you are studying as well or better.

Note: Be careful with etymologies. **Etymology** is the study of the origin and derivation of words. BDB's etymologies are sometimes fanciful. In *The Semantics of Biblical Language*, James Barr criticized the use of etymologies in biblical studies. He pointed out that context and usage determine the meaning of a word, not etymology. For example, the word "nice" originally meant "stupid" in English. Someone hearing the word "nice" used today would know from the context that it no longer means "stupid."

Barr noted another danger. The lexicons of Semitic languages, particularly Arabic, contain so many meanings for a root that an interpreter can choose any meaning that suits her or his purposes.

When a word is rare and occurs in contexts where its meaning is obscure, however, consulting the uses of the root in other Semitic languages may be necessary and provide important interpretive clues. For example, the Hebrew word מִשְׁכָּה occurs only in Isaiah 65:11 and Proverbs 23:30. Neither context makes clear the meaning of the word. Since the meaning of the root מִשַּׁךְ is "to mix," the traditional translation in Proverbs, represented by the RSV, is "those who tarry long over wine, those who go to try *mixed wine*." But a Ugaritic text has a list of vessels which includes *mmsk* listed after *spl* (bowl). Since the מִשְׁכָּה is being filled, a cup or mixing bowl makes sense in the context. Thus, the New Jewish Publication Society Bible (NJPS) translates Proverbs 23:30 as: "Those whom wine keeps till the small hours. Those who gather to drain the *cups*."



Recently people who study the meaning of words have been realizing that the study of synonyms and antonyms may be as important or more important than the meanings a lexicon lists. **Synonyms** are words with the same or similar meanings. **Antonyms** are words with a contrary meaning. You should develop an understanding of how the word is and is not like its synonyms in various contexts. *DCH* is particularly helpful in studying synonyms and antonyms.

### **Concordances**

Lexicons are created by collecting all the occurrences of a word and grouping them according to meaning. You can do this yourself by using a concordance. A **concordance** lists the verse and a selection from the verse where a word occurs. In some cases you may want to group words yourself before studying lexicons in order to make your own discoveries without being biased by them. Three major Hebrew concordances are: Evan-Shoshan, *A New Concordance of the Old Testament*; Lisowsky, *Konkordanz zum Hebräischen Alten Testament*; and Mandelkern, *Veteris Testamenti Concordantiae Hebraicae atque Chaldaicae* (2 vols.). Each has its advantages and disadvantages, but the last is the most comprehensive.

If you find reading the Hebrew verses difficult, *The Englishman's Hebrew and Chaldee Concordance of the Old Testament* lists the verses in English under the Hebrew forms.

A number of computer programs are now the best concordances because of the speed with which they can compile customized lists of words, phrases, or grammatical forms.

As you study the occurrences of the word, you should group them according to book, genre, and historical period to understand the differences in meaning between different authors, genres of literature, and historical periods. You should also note the nearby words such as prepositions that may be indicators of a particular meaning. Compare the synonyms and antonyms of the word. If the word study is too large, you may want to limit it by studying only one form, grammatical construction, book, genre, or historical period.

## Versions

Versions are translations of the Bible into other languages. Early versions may have had insights into the meaning of words. The **Septuagint** is a collection of translations of biblical books into Greek from the second and third centuries B.C.E. The Septuagint is sometimes abbreviated by the roman numeral LXX, because of the ancient tradition that seventy-two scholars translated the Septuagint in seventy days. If you know Greek, you could look to see how the Septuagint has translated the word. If the meaning is very different, however, the Septuagint may have been using a Hebrew manuscript with a different word. The best one-volume work for purchase is Rahlfs' *Septuaginta*. Two multi-volume, critical editions of the Septuagint are also available.

## Theological Dictionaries

There are extensive and detailed discussions of words with a view to their theological meaning in *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament (TDNT)* and *Theological Dictionary of the Old Testament (TDOT)*. *TDNT* includes long discussions of the Hebrew words that lie behind the NT Greek. There is a serious danger of becoming overawed by the extent and detail of information in these two works and not forming your own opinions. James Barr wrote the work mentioned earlier as a critique of the methods and conclusions of these dictionaries. In addition to criticizing the emphasis on etymology rather than context and usage, he questioned the idea that a word carries all its meanings into every context. This makes for interesting theologizing, but is not how language works. Words may bring some associations with them, but context may exclude other associations for the native speaker. Again, the way the word is used and the specific context in which it is used determine its meaning.

Less extensive but useful is Westermann and Jenni's *Theological Lexicon of the Old Testament*. Articles by forty international scholars discuss the meanings of words in their historical and religious contexts.

**Exercises**

1. In Psalm 1:2, the New Revised Standard Version (NRSV) translates תּוֹרָה as “law.” The New Jewish Publication Society (NJPS) or *Tanakh* translates it as “teaching.” Do a word study to find out which is the better translation. תּוֹרָה is on page 435 in BDB. The root is on the previous page. You may want to focus on the use of the word in Psalms to make the study more manageable.

Some standard questions that you can ask when doing a word study are:

- a. What is the meaning in other languages? (Use BDB)
- b. What are the meanings that BDB lists?
- c. What are the meanings that *HALOT* lists?
- d. What are its synonyms and antonyms listed in *DCH* and how is it like or unlike them?
- e. What meanings do you find by doing your own investigation with a concordance?
- f. What is the meaning in the particular Bible passage(s)? Commentaries may be helpful to understand the use in particular passages.

Some have suggested that Psalm 1 is placed at the beginning of the book of Psalms as an introduction. If Psalm 1 is an introduction, how would the translation and interpretation of תּוֹרָה influence our understanding of the book of Psalms?

2. The meanings of biblical names often have religious or literary significance. For example, אָדָם “Adam” means “human being.” The name יְהוֹנָתָן “Jonathan” means “the LORD (יְהוָה) has given (נָתַן).” In BDB, look up the etymology (the information in parentheses about the origin of the word) for the following names you learned in Chapter 2.

יוֹסֵף  
שְׁמוּאֵל

יַעֲקֹב  
יִשְׂרָאֵל

דָּוִד  
יְרוּשָׁלַם

בְּנִימִן  
יִצְחָק

## Chapter 5

### Pronouns and Demonstratives

**Pronouns** are words that substitute for nouns (this, that, he, she, they, and the like). In Hebrew, pronouns may be either independent or suffixed.

#### Independent Personal Pronouns

Independent pronouns are independent because they are separate words. Personal pronouns have **person** (first, second, or third), **gender** (masculine, feminine, or common), and **number** (singular or plural). The first person is “I” or “we” in English. The second person is “you.” The third person is “he,” “she,” and “they.” Person, gender, and number are abbreviated PGN in the table below and elsewhere in this book. In Hebrew the **independent personal pronouns** are:

PGN	Pronoun	Trans.	PGN	Pronoun	Trans.
3ms	הוא	he	3mp	הֵמָּה הֵם	they
3fs	היא	she	3fp	הֵנָּה	they
2ms	אתָּה אַתָּ	you	2mp	אתֶּם	you
2fs	אתְּ	you	2fp	אתֵּן אתֶּנָּה	you
1cs	אֲנִי אֲנִי	I	1cp	אֲנֵחָנוּ	we

As the table indicates, several independent pronouns have alternate forms. Note also where the accents are when you learn to pronounce them.

### Suffixed Pronouns

Pronouns may also be added as suffixes to prepositions, verbs, nouns, and particles. As in the example below, the vowels of the form to which the suffixed pronoun is attached may change:

אַרְצֶךָ                      your land

The following table shows suffixed pronouns attached to the preposition lamed, לְ “to.”

PGN	Suff. pron.	Trans.	PGN	Suff. pron.	Trans.
3ms	לֹ	to him	3mp	לָהֶם	to them
3fs	לָהּ	to her	3fp	לָהֶן	to them
2ms	לְךָ	to you	2mp	לָכֶם	to you
2fs	לְךָ	to you	2fp	לָכֶן	to you
1cs	לִי	to me	1cp	לָנוּ	to us

The dot in the 3fs suffix, a **mappiq**, indicates that this is a consonant, not a vowel letter. Taking note of this will be particularly important when distinguishing a suffixed pronoun from something else, such as a fs ending on a noun.

There are other forms of suffixed pronouns attached to other prepositions and other words. The main concern of this chapter is pronouns suffixed to prepositions. Nouns, verbs and particles, however, take the same pronoun suffixes.

The table below summarizes the different forms of **suffixed pronouns**. For beginning students, it is probably enough to memorize the pronouns on lamed in the table above and merely be familiar with the following table for future reference. The suffixed pronouns are often used as objects so that is the translation given in

both tables. They may also be possessive (his, her, your . . .). The similarities between the independent and suffixed pronouns may help you remember and recognize both.

PGN	Suff. pron.	Trans.	PGN	Suff. pron.	Trans.
3ms	הוּ-הוּ-וְ נָ-נָ	him	3mp	הֵם-הֵם-וְ הֵם-הֵם-וְ	them
3fs	הִיא-הִיא-וְ הִיא-הִיא-וְ	her	3fp	הֵנָּה-הֵנָּה-וְ הֵנָּה-הֵנָּה-וְ	them
2ms	אַתָּה-אַתָּה-וְ	you	2mp	אַתֶּם-אַתֶּם-וְ	you
2fs	אַתְּ-אַתְּ-וְ	you	2fp	אַתֶּן-אַתֶּן-וְ	you
1cs	אֲנִי-אֲנִי-וְ אֲנִי-אֲנִי-וְ	me	1cp	אֲנִי-אֲנִי-וְ	us

Vowels and consonants may arise between the suffix and the form to which it is attached. Common is the addition of a vowel to the final letter of the word and a yod before the suffix. Compare:

אָבִי                      father  
and  
אָבִיו                    his father.

Compare:

עָלַי                    on  
and  
עָלֵיהֶם                on them.

Some words such as the preposition כְּ- (like) add consonants in addition to vowels before the suffixed pronouns. For example:

כְּמִוְהוּ                like him  
כְּמִוְנוּ                like us

like them

In grammar, a demonstrative is a word that points to something. A demonstrative can be a **near** demonstrative, when it points to something close (this), or a **far** demonstrative, when it points to something far away (that).

Notice that the far demonstratives have the same form and usage as the third person independent pronouns. English makes a distinction between personal pronouns and far demonstratives that Hebrew does not. Pronouns have a pointing quality and in some instances this demonstrative meaning warrants the use of English demonstrative adjectives in translation.

This is the land (Deut 34:4)

This is the gate of the LORD  
(Ps 118:20)

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes אָל.

When demonstratives are **attributive**, they come after the word they modify and agree in gender, number, and definiteness. Study the way in which the two following examples are translated into English:

הָאִשָּׁה הַזֹּאת	this woman
הַיּוֹם הַהוּא	that day

### Vocabulary

אָב	father
אֵלֶּה	these
אֲנַחְנוּ	we
אֲנִי	I (long form)
אֲנִי	I
אַתָּה	you (ms) (אַתָּה “you” [fs])
אַתֶּם	you (mp) (אַתֶּם “you” [fp])
בֶּן	son
בָּנִים	sons (irregular plural)
בֵּית	house
בָּתִּים	houses (irregular plural)
דָּבָר	word, thing, matter
הוּא	he, that
הִיא	she, that
הֵם	they (m) (הֵמָּה “they” [f])
זֶה	this (m)
זֹאת	this (f)
יוֹם	day
יָמִים	days (irregular plural)



### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following:

זֶה־הַיּוֹם (Ps 118:24)

לְפָנַי הַבַּיִת הַזֶּה וּלְפָנֶיךָ כִּי שְׁמוֹךָ<sup>2</sup> בַּבַּיִת הַזֶּה (2 Chr 20:9)

בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם אֵין<sup>3</sup> מֶלֶךְ בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל (Judg 17:6)

אַתָּה הָאִישׁ . . . אֲנֹכִי מִשְׁחָתִיךָ<sup>4</sup> לְמֶלֶךְ עַל־יִשְׂרָאֵל (2 Sam 12:7)

זָמַמְתִּי<sup>5</sup> בַּיָּמִים הָאֵלֶּה (Zech 8:15)

לְהַיְטִיב<sup>6</sup> אֶת־יְרוּשָׁלַם

---

<sup>2</sup> “your name”

<sup>3</sup> “no”

<sup>4</sup> “I anointed you”

<sup>5</sup> “I have purposed”

<sup>6</sup> “to do good”

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to look up a couple of words in a lexicon.

(Deut 34:4) וַיֹּאמֶר<sup>7</sup> יְהוָה אֵלָיו זֹאת הָאָרֶץ  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי<sup>8</sup> לְאַבְרָהָם לְיִצְחָק וּלְיַעֲקֹב

(Gen 6:4) הַנֶּפֶלִים הָיוּ<sup>9</sup> בָּאָרֶץ בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם

(Jer 30:4) וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר<sup>10</sup> יְהוָה  
אֶל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֶל־יְהוּדָה

---

<sup>7</sup> “said”

<sup>8</sup> “I promised”

<sup>9</sup> “were”

<sup>10</sup> “spoke”

## Chapter 6

### Qal Imperfect, Part I

**Verbs** are words that express action, existence, or occurrence. In many languages, a verb expresses many things in a single sentence. A verb in a Hebrew sentence has more functions than in a sentence in English. Just one example is that the verb includes the subject. A separate subject is often unnecessary in Hebrew. The Hebrew verb also expresses ideas that are difficult to express in English. Because it is so important for the meaning of a Hebrew sentence, we begin early introducing the verb.

#### Qal Stem

The Qal is the verbal stem (in Hebrew *binyan* “building”) with the simplest construction and meaning. Qal means light. Other names for the Qal stem are G (German: *Grundstamm*, “Basic stem”) or B (Basic stem). The modification of the Qal by the addition of consonants and vowels creates the various other stems with more complex meanings. This will become clearer when you study the other stems in future chapters.

#### Imperfect Conjugation

For each stem, there are also two major conjugations in Hebrew. A **conjugation** is a list of the forms of a verb according to person (first, second, or third), gender (masculine, feminine, or common), and number (singular or plural). Person, gender, and number are abbreviated PGN in the table below and elsewhere in this book. Other names for a conjugation are an inflection and a paradigm.

The most common conjugation in Hebrew is the **imperfect**. Hebrew adds prefixes and some suffixes to the root to form the imperfect. A **prefix** is a consonant and a vowel (Cv) added to the

beginning of a word. A **suffix** is a vowel (v) or a cluster of vowels and consonants (Cv or CvC) added to the end of the word. The root שמר (to keep, guard, or watch) will be used in this text to demonstrate the stems and conjugations for verbs. The imperfect conjugation is as follows:

PGN	Form	PGN	Form
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	3fp	תִּשְׁמְרֶנָּה
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	2fp	תִּשְׁמְרֶנָּה
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	1cp	נִשְׁמֹר

When you are reading, these prefixes and suffixes are **indicators** that you have an imperfect. The indicators are those features that occur on most forms and are therefore the most reliable indicators that you are looking at a particular form. I would recommend that you memorize the basic conjugation in the above chart, noting especially the prefixes and suffixes. In future chapters, however, the indicators should free you from having to memorize all the consonants and vowels on conjugations.

The 3mp and 2mp forms frequently have a nun on the end:

יִשְׁמְרוּן      תִּשְׁמְרוּן

When a maqqeph (a dash) joins the imperfect to another word, the *holem* may reduce to a *qamets hatuph*.

יִשְׁמֹר- becomes יִשְׁמְרֹ-

Some verbs take an a-class or i-class vowel instead of a *holem*.

יִכְבֹּד      he honored

These verbs are usually either from a root with a III-guttural (שׁ ך ך ץ), because gutturals prefer a-class vowels underneath and before them, or from roots that have a stative meaning. (For the definition of stative, see Chapter 7).

### Use for Past Narration

The imperfect is most commonly used with a prefixed vav (waw) to narrate past events.

וַיִּשְׁלַח                      he sent (Gen 41:8)

The prefixed vav is commonly called a vav conversive or vav consecutive. The reasons for these names will be explained in the next chapter. This book will use the term **vav consecutive**.

Some scholars think of the imperfect with prefixed vav as a conjugation separate from the imperfect because it has a different usage and sometimes a different form than the imperfect without the vav. They may therefore refer to this as the *vayyiqtol* or *wayyiqtol*. The name comes from the 3ms form (וַיִּקְטֹל) of the root קטל. This book uses the traditional term, imperfect, because it is more widely used.

The pointing of the vav consecutive (וֿ) is different than the vav conjunction (וּ). The vav with pataḥ and doubling in the prefix (וֿוּ) is an **indicator** of the imperfect. When you see vav with pataḥ and doubling of an imperfect prefix, you know you have an imperfect verb. Because ʾaleph does not accept doubling and lengthens the preceding vowel instead, the form of the vav consecutive with the 1cs imperfect is:

וָאֶשְׁמַע                      I heard . . . (Isa 6:8)

Many versions translate the vav consecutive as “and.” This sounds childish to an English speaker, because there are so many in past narration. Moreover, the pointing on the vav consecutive is different than on the vav conjunction. Therefore, another word such as “then” or, if it begins a sentence or clause, a punctuation

mark such as a period (.), semicolon (;), or a comma (,) at the end of the preceding clause, are often better translations of the vav.

## Word Order

The **subject** is the person, place, or thing that does the action of the verb. Independent personal pronouns are unnecessary and not usually used with finite verbs in Hebrew, as in the two examples in the previous section. When independent pronouns are used with finite verbs, it is usually for emphasis. When the subject is expressed as a separate word, it normally follows the verb rather than precedes it as in English.

וַיִּשְׁמַע אַבְרָם Abram heard (Gen 14:14)

## Sign of the Definite Direct Object (אוֹת or אוֹתָּהּ)

The direct object is the object on which a subject and verb act directly. When the direct object of a verb is definite, Hebrew often (not always) marks it with the **sign of the definite direct object** (אוֹת or אוֹתָּהּ). This may help you distinguish the subject and object when they both follow a verb. When a maqqeph joins the sign of the definite direct object to a following word, the resulting shift in accent causes the tsere under the ʾaleph to change to a segol. The sign of the definite direct object is not translated in English.

וַיִּבְרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם God created the human  
(Gen 1:27)

## Missing and Weak Letters

In order to recognize a word and look it up in BDB, you need to know the three-letter root. Sometimes, after removing the prefix and suffix of a verb, only two letters are left. One letter is missing. It requires some detective work to find the missing letter in order to identify the root and the meaning of the word. These missing letters are often called weak letters. The types of roots with weak letters are often named by the position the weak letter appears in the roots. When a verb is formed, for example, from a root with a

third letter that is a ה, we call it a third he<sup>3</sup> verb (written III-he<sup>3</sup> or III-ה). Letters are often missing in the Qal imperfect when the verb root is I-nun, I-vav, II-vav or yod (also called “hollow”), or III-he<sup>3</sup>. Some people use the name יוֹנָה “Jonah” to help remember the missing letters.

The nun usually assimilates into the second letter of the root with **I-nun** verbs. For example, the Qal imperfect (3ms) of נָתַן is:

נִיתַן                      he put (Gen 1:17)

The nun is assimilated into the tav. This happens in English when the prefix in- (not) is added to rational and becomes not *irrational* but *irrational*. In Hebrew the doubling of the tav is expressed by a strong dagesh. When there are only two root letters, doubling is the **indicator** of a I-nun.

The frequently occurring verb לָקַח masquerades as a I-nun.

וַיִּקַּח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים                      The LORD God took (Gen 2:15)

With **III-he<sup>3</sup>** verbs, the he<sup>3</sup> may be present, replaced by a yod or absent.

וָאֶהְיֶה	I was (2 Sam 7:6)
וַיְהִי	they were (Gen 2:25)
וַתְּהִינָה	they were (Num 36:11)

When the vav consecutive is added, the stress moves toward the vav and the final he<sup>3</sup> is lost.

וַיְהִי                      he was (Gen 21:20)

Notice that there is no doubling in the first letter. A strong dagesh disappears when some consonants have a sheva under them.

**I-vav** verbs are verbs that in the history of the language used to begin with a vav. Most forms came to look like I-yod verbs. I-vav verbs lose the first root letter. Thus the imperfect of יָשַׁב is:

וַיֵּשֶׁב      he lived (Gen 4:16)

The tsere under the yod is the **indicator** of a I-vav imperfect.

The verb הָלַךְ masquerades as a I-vav in the imperfect.

וַיֵּלֶךְ      he went (Gen 12:4)

This verb occurs frequently so remember it whenever you see וַלֵּךְ.

Most **I-yod** verbs retain the yod.

וַיֵּיטֵב      its was good (Gen 41:37)

Though יָכַל (to be able) has יוֹכַל, תּוֹכַל, etc.

**II-vav** and **II-yod** verbs are also called **hollow** verbs, because they lose the vav or yod in some forms. Without the vav consecutive, the middle root letter is visible in most forms of the imperfect of the II-vav or II-yod (hollow) verbs:

יָקוּם      יָשִׁים      יָבוֹא

But hollow verbs occur more often after the vav consecutive and then the middle letter is missing:

וַיָּקָם      he arose      וַיָּשֶׂם      he put      וַיָּבֹא      he came

When there is a qamets under the prefix of the imperfect and two root letters, this is the **indicator** that the middle root letter is ך or ך'.



**I-guttural** verbs have different vowels because they prefer a-class<sup>1</sup> vowels and composite shevas. The guttural is not a missing letter and the prefixes, suffixes and, when it is present, the vav consecutive with doubling identify the imperfect.

יָעַשׂ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים... The LORD God made... (Gen 3:21)

Some roots are **doubly weak**. The previous example—from עָשָׂה—is doubly weak. It is both a I-guttural and a III-he<sup>2</sup>.

The vowel pointing on frequently occurring I-<sup>3</sup>aleph imperfects is peculiar:

יֹאמַר he said (Gen 1:3, etc.)  
וְתָאכַל she ate (Gen 3:6)

When the 1cs prefix is added, you would expect to see two <sup>3</sup>alephs, but one of the <sup>3</sup>alephs is lost:

אֵינִי I said (Gen 20:13)

## Charting Verbs

A convenient way of presenting the information about a verb form is to chart it. For example, יֹאמַר would be charted as:

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features
אמר	Qal	Imperfect	3ms	vav consecutive

## Interrogative Particle (אֵינִי)

Be careful not to confuse the interrogative particle (אֵינִי) with the definite article. Note the different vowel pointing. Hebrew uses the interrogative particle prefixed to a word at the beginning of a question.

הֲלֹא אֲנִי יְהוָה Am I not the LORD? (Exod 4:11)

<sup>1</sup> See the discussion of classes of vowels and chart of vowels in Chapter 2.

Some questions are marked by other question words. And some questions are not marked—the context tells us they are questions.

## Vocabulary

You may be familiar with many of the verbs in this vocabulary, because you looked up their root meaning in Chapter 1. The vowel points on the root are from the 3ms form of the perfect conjugation that you will learn in Chapter 10. Lexicons normally use it because it has no consonants added to the root.

אָכַל	eat, devour
אָמַר	say
אָתָּה or אֵת	(The sign of the definite direct object. Not translated.)
בֹּא	come in, enter, come, go, go in
הֵ-	(prefixed, interrogative particle)
הָיָה	be, become, happen
הָלַךְ	go, walk
יָדַע	know
יָצָא	go out, come out
יָשַׁב	sit, remain, dwell, inhabit
לָקַח	take
מָוַת	die
נָתַן	give
עָשָׂה	do, make
רָאָה	see
שׁוּב	turn, return
שָׁמַע	hear, obey

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Make several copies of the verb chart worksheets from Appendix A. In this and all future exercises, chart the verbs.

וַאֲבֹא וַאֲרָאָה (Ezek 8:10)

וַיִּקַּח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם (Gen 2:15)

הָלֹא כָל־הָאָרֶץ לְפָנַיִךְ (Gen 13:9)

וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאִשָּׁה ... וַתֹּאמֶר הָאִשָּׁה ... (Gen 3:13)

וַתֵּבֵא בַת־שֶׁבַע<sup>2</sup> אֶל־הַמֶּלֶךְ (1 Kgs 1:15)

וַיְהִי בַיּוֹם הַהוּא וַיָּבֹאוּ (Gen 26:32)

וַיֵּלֶךְ מֹשֶׁה וַיָּשָׁב אֶל־יָתֵר<sup>3</sup> (Exod 4:18)

---

<sup>2</sup> “Bathsheba”

<sup>3</sup> “Jethro”

2. Read aloud and translate the following and chart the verbs. You will need to use a lexicon to translate a few of the words.

וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאָדָם וּלְאִשְׁתּוֹ<sup>4</sup> כְּתִנּוֹת (Gen 3:21)

וַתֹּאכַל וַתֵּתֶן גַּם לְאִשָּׁה עִמָּהּ וַיֹּאכַל (Gen 3:6)

וַיַּעַל יְהוֹרָה וַיִּתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת־הַכֶּנַּעֲנִי וְהַפְּרָזִי בְיָדָם<sup>5</sup> (Judg 1:4)

---

<sup>4</sup> “and for his wife”

<sup>5</sup> To recognize this word, you may need to identify the prefix and suffix and remove them.

## Chapter 7

### Qal Imperfect, Part II

#### Meaning of the Qal

The Qal stem may have either a dynamic or a stative meaning. A **stative verb** is a verb that describes a state or circumstance, one that is either external and physical, or internal and psychological (or perceptual).

She was old (*external stative*).

He was afraid (*internal stative*).

English tends to express them with adjectives and a form of the verb “to be.” They also tend to be **intransitive**. An intransitive verb is one whose action does *not* pass over from the subject to an object.

Qal verbs that have a stative meaning tend to have a tsere or a pataḥ under the second root letter instead of a ḥolem. (See the chart in the previous chapter.)

יְהוֹדָה יָזֵקן      Jehoida was old (2 Chr 24:15)

**Dynamic<sup>1</sup> verbs** describe a state of activity. The subject puts energy into the action of the verb and the activity may have different phases. Dynamic verbs tend to be **transitive**. Transitive verbs transfer the effects of the verb from a subject to an object.

וַיֹּאכְלוּ עִמּוֹ לֶחֶם      They ate bread with him  
(Job 42:11)

---

<sup>1</sup> Other names for dynamic verbs are: fientive (Waltke & O'Connor), voluntaria, *freiwillig* (Haupt) and active (Brockelmann).

Some verbs in Hebrew have both dynamic and stative forms and meanings. Some verbs, such as those expressing emotion or a mental state, have meanings that are partially stative and partially dynamic.

“I was afraid” (סָרַח Gen 3:10): *stative*

“Do not fear the people of the land” (סָרַח Num 14:9):  
*partially stative, partially dynamic*

### **Meaning of the Imperfect**

In the last chapter, we saw that the imperfect was often used with a prefixed *vav* to narrate the past. Scholars debate the meaning of the imperfect. Older Jewish grammarians and some modern scholars understand the imperfect as a present and future tense. In this understanding, the prefixed *vav* is called a **vav conversive** because it is thought of as converting the imperfect from a present-future to a past tense.

This understanding seems inadequate for at least two reasons. First, it seems unlikely that a tense could be converted in this way. Second, a number of the ways the imperfect is used do not fit into a simple tense system.

Therefore, beginning in the nineteenth-century the view was advanced and eventually came to predominate among scholars that the Hebrew conjugations represented not tense but aspect. In grammar, **aspect** refers to the duration and completion of an action. The imperfect, they suggested, described *an incomplete action*. The context determined whether the action occurred in the past, present or future. The name imperfect comes from this understanding of the conjugation.

According to this theory, the use of the imperfect to narrate the past with a prefixed *vav* is not because the imperfect is converted, but because it is in a narrative sequence. The imperfect with a prefixed *vav* continued a narrative sequence that began with a perfect (perfect . . . *vav*+imperfect . . . *vav*+imperfect . . .). Since many sequences do not actually begin with a perfect, the perfect verb could be implied. In this understanding, the prefixed *vav* was called a **vav consecutive** because the *vav* indicates that the imperfect is consecutive to or depends on the preceding perfect.

Some modern scholars also make use of comparative material from other Semitic languages to explain the historical development of the imperfect. Akkadian and Arabic have a longer, prefix conjugation with a range of meanings similar to the Hebrew imperfect and a shorter, prefix conjugation with a past tense or preterite meaning. With some weak verbs and the Hiphil stem (see Chapter 17), Hebrew uses a shorter form of the imperfect when it is prefixed by a vav in a narrative sequence and a longer form when the imperfect stands alone. Many scholars, therefore, think that Hebrew originally had two prefix conjugations—a longer one (*yaqtulu*) and a shorter one (*yaqtul*). When the language lost its final short vowels around 1100 B.C.E., the two conjugations became almost identical. The earlier conjugation and its preterite meaning are present in Biblical Hebrew as the imperfect with prefixed vav in narrative sequences, and rarely without prefixed vav.

Many Hebrew scholars today hold some combination of the aspect and historical-comparative theories. Hebrew conjugations may communicate a complex interaction of tense, aspect, and other factors such as mood. As it refers to verbs, **mood** has to do with marking whether the speaker thinks that a state or an action is real (factual) or unreal (commands, wishes, possibilities, and the like). English expresses unreal moods by adding words like *should* and *might*.

Waltke and O'Connor, in *Biblical Hebrew Syntax*, are typical of contemporary scholars who attempt to synthesize various theories. They suggest the imperfect represents an *incomplete, progressive, repeated, or dependent situation*.

Progressive or repeated situations may be habitual, customary, or proverbial and may best be translated into English with the present tense or phrases such as “used to.”

יֹאמְרוּ הַמְּשָׁלִים      The poets *used to say* (Num 21:27)

Dependent uses often require a modal translation in English (would, should, could, might).

מִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר	Who is the LORD that
אֲשָׁמַע בְּקוֹלוֹ	I <i>should</i> listen to his voice (Exod 5:2)

Certain dependent situations may require “let” or “may” in English.

וַיֵּשְׁבוּ בָאָרֶץ	Let them live in the land
	(Gen 34:21)

The form and meaning of these modal and dependent uses of the imperfect overlap with the form and meaning of the jussive and cohortative, which will be discussed in Chapters 22 and 23.

The exercises in this and subsequent chapters include a variety of uses of the imperfect so that you will avoid being lulled into a false sense that the imperfect is an English tense and will become sensitive to a range of uses. Questions remain and the above theories need to be tested against the evidence. Each of us may want to test them ourselves by asking what the imperfect means each time we translate it. On the one hand, with a prefixed vav, the imperfect may be translated as a simple past. Even with a prefixed vav, however, be alert that in a few cases the imperfect may refer to an incomplete, progressive, repeated, or dependent situation. On the other hand, when the imperfect stands alone, without a prefixed vav, it probably communicates an incomplete, progressive, repeated, or dependent situation and the tense will need to be determined by the context. Without a prefixed vav, however, be alert that occasionally it may be a remnant of the older, shorter, prefix conjugation and communicate a past tense or preterite meaning.

## Negation

The imperfect is negated with לֹא.

לֹא אֲכַל	I will not eat (Gen 24:33)
-----------	----------------------------



The second person imperfect with **לֹא** may express a commandment, legislation, or prohibition (“Do not [ever] . . .” or “You shall not . . .”).

לֹא תֹאכַל מִמֶּנּוּ      you shall not eat from it (Gen 3:17)

The second person jussive, which will be discussed in more detail in Chapters 22 and 23, often has the same form as the imperfect. The jussive with **אַל** expresses urgency (“Stop . . .” or “Don’t . . .”).

אַל-תִּירָא אַבְרָם      Do not be afraid, Abram  
(Gen 15:1)

### The Preposition מִן

The preposition **מִן** (from, than) has both independent and prefixed forms. The **independent** form is linked to a following word with a maqqeph.

מִן-הָעִיר      from the city

With the **prefixed** form, the nun assimilates into the first letter of the word. Thus the form is מִ- with a dagesh in the first letter.

מִמֶּלֶךְ      from a king

Since the gutturals (א ה ח ע) and resh (ר) do not take doubling, the preposition is מִ- or מְ- without a dagesh in the first letter.

מֵעִיר      from a city  
מֵחוּץ      from outside

Unlike other prefixed prepositions, the definite article does not disappear.

מִהָעִיר      from the city

The prefixed form is doubled before some suffixed pronouns.

מִמְּךָ	from you
מִמְּנִי	from me

Note that the forms with the 3ms suffix and 1cp suffix are identical.

מִמֶּנּוּ	from him
מִמֶּנּוּ	from us

This is because the 3ms pronoun suffix has assimilated into the nun making it look like the 1cp suffix:

בָּן + מֶן + בָּן became מִבְּנָהוּ \* became מִמֶּנּוּ

### Suffixed Pronouns

Both the Qal imperfect and the sign of the definite direct object can take the suffixed pronouns introduced in Chapter 5.

וַיֹּאכְלוּהָ	they ate it
---------------	-------------

The imperfect may undergo vowel changes with the addition of the suffix. They do not change the indicators you have learned so they should not affect your ability to recognize and chart the verbs. However, you may want to be aware of the ways in which the vowels can change.

When the vowel between the second and third root letter is a hōlem (יִשְׁמַר) or a tsere (יִתֵּן), it may be reduced to a sheva:

יִשְׁמְרֵנִי	he was watching over me (Job 29:2)
יִתְּנֵנִי	[if] it gives me (Isa 27:4)

Before 2ms and 2mp suffixes, however, the ḥolem may be shortened to qamets ḥatuph, and the tsere to segol.

יִשְׁאַלְךָ	he asks you (Exod 13:14)
יִתֶּנְךָ	he will give you (Deut 28:25)

When the vowel between the second and third root letters is a pataḥ, however, it lengthens to a qamets.

וַיִּקַּח	he took it (Gen 33:11)
-----------	------------------------

Note that when the form of the imperfect ends in a consonant, a helping vowel, either tsere or segol may be added. In the above example, a segol has been added.

A greater challenge for recognizing the suffixed pronouns is that nuns may also be added.

אֶשְׂמְנוּ	I will make him (Gen 21:13)
------------	-----------------------------

The sign of the definite direct object has the form –אות, –את, or –את before suffixed pronouns.

וַיִּתֵּן אֹתָם אֱלֹהִים	God set them (Gen 1:17)
יִפְקֹד אֱלֹהִים אֶתְכֶם	God will visit you (Exod 13:19)
וַיַּעַשׂ אוֹתוֹ גִּדְעוֹן	Gideon made it (Jdg 8:27)

The suffixed pronouns on either the imperfect or the sign of the definite direct object function as objects of the verb. There is apparently no difference in meaning. Compare the previous example to this one.

וַיַּעֲשֵׂהוּ	He made it (Exod 32:4)
---------------	------------------------

## Vocabulary

אֵין אֵין	there is, there are not
אֵל	no, not
אם	if, then
אֲשֶׁר	that, which, who
גַּם	also, indeed
הִנֵּה	behold! lo! look!
יָד	hand
כֹּהֵן	priest
לֹא	no, not
מִן	from, out of, part of, because of; than
עַד	to, unto, as far as (of space); until, while (of time)
עִיר	city
עָרִים	cities (irregular plural)
עַם	people
פָּנִים	face (You have already had this word in the vocabulary for Chapter 3 as part of the preposition, לְפָנַי “before.” It does not occur in the singular—פָּנָה.)

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following and chart the verbs:

(Gen 1:26) וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים נַעֲשֶׂה אָדָם בְּצַלְמֵנוּ<sup>2</sup>

(Gen 3:6) וַתֵּקַח מִפִּרְיוֹ<sup>3</sup> וַתֹּאכַל וַתֵּתֶן גַּם-לְאִשָּׁהּ עִמָּהּ וַיֹּאכַל

<sup>2</sup> You will need to look up this word in a lexicon. Beware that there is a prefix and a suffix you will need to remove before you can look up the word.

<sup>3</sup> “some of its fruit”

עֵינֶיךָ<sup>4</sup> תִּרְאֶינָה יְרוּשָׁלַם (Isa 33:20)

לֹא תֹאכְלוּ מִמֶּנּוּ וְלֹא תִגְעוּ<sup>5</sup> בּוֹ  
בֶּן-תַּמְתֹּן<sup>6</sup>

וַיֹּאמְרוּ כָל אֲשֶׁר-דִּבֶּר<sup>7</sup> יְהוָה נַעֲשֶׂה וְנִשְׁמָע (Exod 24:7)

וּמִלְכִים מִמֶּדָּה יֵצְאוּ (Gen 17:6)

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to use a lexicon to translate some of the words. Chart the verbs.

וַיִּשֶׂם שֵׁם אֶת-הָאָדָם (Gen 2:8)

וְאֶת-הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לֹא-יִרְאֶה עוֹד (Jer 22:12)

וַיֹּאמֶר מֹשֶׁה אֶל-הָאֱלֹהִים מִי אֲנִי כִּי אֵלֶךְ  
אֶל-פְּרַעֲוֶה

וַיִּקַּח מִיָּדָם וַיֵּצֵר<sup>8</sup> אֹתוֹ בַּחֶרֶט  
וַיַּעֲשֶׂהוּ עֵגֶל מִסַּכָּה<sup>9</sup> וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֵלֶּה אֱלֹהֵיךָ יִשְׂרָאֵל

<sup>4</sup> “your eyes”

<sup>5</sup> Try to figure out the root. One letter is missing. Then look up the meaning in a lexicon.

<sup>6</sup> Look up בֶּן in a lexicon. בֶּן-תַּמְתֹּן is an exception to the indicator for the imperfect of hollow verbs. The expected qamets under the prefix sometimes reduces to a sheva when a suffix is added. In this case, the suffix is the long form of the imperfect suffix with a nun added. The qamets sometimes reduces with the 2fp or 3fp suffix of the imperfect, although not always.

<sup>7</sup> “has spoken” (This is a verb form that you have not yet had.)

<sup>8</sup> One letter is missing, but if you use the indicators, you should be able to find this verb in a lexicon.

<sup>9</sup> “molten metal” or “image”

(Lev 10:2) וַתֵּצֵא אֵשׁ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה וַתֹּאכַל אוֹתָם  
וַיָּמָתוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה:

## Chapter 8

### Opening the Hebrew Bible

The best Hebrew Bible for most purposes is *Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia*, abbreviated *BHS* in biblical studies. When you open this Bible, you will see many marks on the letters, and notes in the margins. Some of the footnotes are from the contemporary scholars who edited *BHS*, but the majority of marks and notes are from Jewish scholars, called **Masoretes**, who worked from the third to the eleventh centuries C.E. There were Western Masoretes centered in Tiberias and Eastern Masoretes centered in Babylonia. The Masoretes developed the vowel points and accents to indicate the traditional pronunciation.

The text of the Hebrew Bible is called the Masoretic Text (MT) because it goes back to a family of texts produced by the Masoretes.

The Western Masoretes eventually became dominant. The text of *BHS* is a copy of the **Leningrad Codex** copied in 1008 C.E. It is one of the best representatives of the Western, Tiberian tradition. A **codex** is an ancient book. This one was in the Russian Public Library in Leningrad (now St. Petersburg).

#### Divisions

There are markers of various divisions in the Hebrew Bible that probably go back before the time of the Masoretes.

**Soph Pa-suq.** This looks like a large colon made of diamond shapes ( : ) and indicates the end of a verse. Verses often do not correspond to English sentences.

**Open and Closed Paragraphs.** Originally, an open paragraph was a paragraph that began on a new line after an incomplete or empty

line. A closed paragraph began on the same line after a space. By the time of the Leningrad Codex, the Masoretes no longer maintained this distinction. But a **⌌** for **open** and **⌍** for **closed** appears in spaces between verses. In *BHS*, the editors have laid out the paragraphs on the pages in ways that represent their interpretive understanding of the divisions in the text. Their paragraph divisions may or may not agree with the Masoretes.

**Seder and Parashah.** These two symbols appear on the inside margin and are the divisions between liturgical readings or lessons. The **seḏer** (סֵדֶר) is from the Palestinian tradition and divides the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible, into three years of weekly readings. The **parashah** (פֶּרֶשׁ) is from the Babylonian tradition and divides the Pentateuch into readings for one year. You can see open and closed paragraph markers and a seder on page five of *BHS*.

### Accents

The Masoretic accents serve three functions. First, they show the accented or stressed syllable in a word. Second, they indicate the grouping of words. Third, they are musical. Although their primary function is the third, the first two are the main concern for reading and interpretation.

For reading, it is only necessary to note their location and stress the appropriate vowel in pronunciation. Most accents appear above or below the stressed vowel. For interpretation, the meaning of the accents and what the Masoretes are saying about how to join the words together may be significant. For this reason a list follows of the most frequently occurring and important accents and their meanings.

There are two different systems of accents in the Hebrew Bible—the **accents of the twenty-one books** and the **accents of the three books**. The three books are Psalms, Job, and Proverbs. Their system of accents is slightly different from the rest of the Hebrew Bible, the twenty-one books.

The accents are either **conjunctive** (joining) or **disjunctive** (dividing). The disjunctive accents occur on the last word of a



group of related words. For the beginning student it is enough to learn to recognize some of the disjunctive and conjunctive accents. The placement of the accents is illustrated on the letter ׀ in the following lists.

---

### A Few Major Disjunctive Accents

---

׀	silluq	On the stressed syllable immediately preceding soph pasuq ( : ).
׀ veyored	ʿoleh	Note that this accent has two parts, one on the syllable before the stressed syllable. It divides verses in two in the three books but is not used in the twenty-one books.
׀ ʾatnaḥ	ʾatnaḥ	Divides verses in two in the twenty-one books. In a short verse tiphḥah or zaqeph may play this role. In the three books it divides the second half of the verse or may divide short verses in two.
׀ revia <sup>c</sup>	revia <sup>c</sup>	In the three books it may divide in half a short verse without an ʾatnaḥ. It may also divide the first half of a verse with ʾatnaḥ or be the accent immediately before ʿoleh veyored. In the twenty-one books it is a less important accent.
׀ zaqeph qaton	zaqeph qaton	In the twenty-one books it divides the verse into quarters. Or, in other words, it is the next major division before or after ʾatnaḥ. Not used in the three books.
׀ zaqeph gadol	zaqeph gadol	While the musical value is different than the previous accent, the use for dividing the verse is the same.

ִּ	tiphḥah	In the twenty-one books, it takes over the function of zaqeph in dividing the verse into quarters when the division comes on the word before ʿatnaḥ or silluq. Looks the same as a conjunctive accent in both the twenty-one and the three books.
ֿ	segolta	May replace zaqeph in first half of a verse. Located on the syllable after the stressed syllable (postpositive).
ִּ	tsinnor	In the three books the next major disjunctive accent after ʿoleh veyored. Thus, it divides a verse into quarters. Postpositive. In the twenty-one books the disjunctive accent zarqaʿ has the same appearance.

---

### **A Few Major Conjunctive Accents**

---

ִּ	munah	
ִּ	mehuppach	Not a conjunctive accent in the three books.
ִּ	merekaʿ	
ִּ	dargaʿ	Only in the twenty-one books.
ִּ	ʿazlaʿ	
ִּ	ʿilluy	Only in the three books.

These are only a few important accents. For in-depth analysis of the accents consult Yeivin, §176–374.

The accents represent the Masoretic understanding of which words belonged together and thus the interpretation of a verse. Commentators sometimes disagree. When you are doing a close reading of a passage, you may want to consider the possibility that different arrangements might make better sense. For example, look

at the last verse of the exercises in the previous chapter (Exod 32:4) and you will see the way accents divide the verse into sense units. You can also practice reading the verse using the accents.

### Pause

When a word occurs with a major disjunctive accent such as silluq or ʔatnaḥ, it is **in pause**, because it comes at a break or pause in the verse. This pause often causes vowel changes, usually lengthening. Some typical examples follow:

Normal	In Pause	Translation
דֶּרֶךְ בֵּית	דֶּרֶךְ בֵּית	road house

### Maqqeph

The maqqeph is a horizontal line that indicates a close connection between two words.

לֹא־מָצָא      he did not find

This connection may result in the first word losing its accent. The loss of the accent often causes a change in the vowel pointing and pronunciation of the first word.

Without Maqqeph	With Maqqeph	Translation
אֵת יְהוָה כָּל בָּשָׂר	אֶת־יְהוָה כָּל־בָּשָׂר	The LORD all flesh

### Marginal Notes

The notes printed beside the text in *BHS* are the **Masora**. The final Masora is at the end of the Bible. The marginal Masora is in the four margins of a *BHS* page.

The **Masora parva** (Mp) is the notes in the side margins. They contain information that assisted the Masoretes in preserving the text unchanged when making copies. A small circle over a word in the text indicates there is a note in the margin. Small

circles between words indicate a note in the margin about the whole phrase. Two circles between two words indicate there are two notes, one referring to the whole phrase, and one referring to part of the phrase. The notes are mostly abbreviations of Aramaic. Dots over the letters indicate they are either abbreviations or numbers. The Latin translations of the words and abbreviations in the margins are on pages L–LV in *BHS*. The English translations are in Scott, *A Simplified Guide to BHS*. Most of the information in the Mp seems trivial to modern readers. Subsequent sections of this chapter discuss some of the more significant notes.

The **Masora magna** (Mm) is the notes at the bottom of the page in *BHS* between the end of the Hebrew text and the text-critical notes. The superscript numbers in the Mp direct you to the appropriate note in the Mm. When the Mp gives the number of occurrences of a word, the Mm gives a list of these occurrences. In early manuscripts, the lists were printed in the upper and lower margins. *BHS* collected these in a separate, multi-volume work and put notes at the bottom of the page indicating the relevant list in this separate work. Unfortunately, only the first volume of the three volumes was ever published.

### “It is Written” and “It is Read”

Where the Masoretes felt the form preserved in the text was unsatisfactory, they placed under the word in the text the vowel points for a more satisfactory reading. The consonants for these vowels were placed in the margin. These may indicate that the Masoretes had other manuscripts whose reading they considered preferable. The form in the consonantal text is called the **Kethiv**, “it is written.” The form preferred by the Masoretes is in the margin and is called the **Qere**, “it is read.” The note is distinctive because it appears over top of a qoph with a dot (קֹ). For examples, see pages 12 and 13 of *BHS*.

There are some words that are to be read differently throughout the Hebrew Bible so there is no note in the margin. These are called **perpetual Qere**. In your vocabulary and exercises, you have already seen two of the most common examples. The name for God that regularly appears with the vowel

points for the Hebrew word for lord is one example. Another perpetual Qere that occurs frequently in the Pentateuch is **הוּא**. The consonantal text has **הוא** but **הוּא** would be a preferable reading.

Although the exercises continue to print selections from *BHS*, from this point forward it would be good to look up the verses in *BHS* and practice using what you have learned in this chapter.

## Exercises

1. Translate the following verse and note the perpetual Qere. You will need to look up **עַץ** in a lexicon.

וַיֹּאמֶר הָאָדָם הָאִשָּׁה אֲשֶׁר נָתַתִּי<sup>1</sup> עִמָּדִי (Gen 3:12)  
הוּא נָתַתָּה<sup>2</sup> לִי מִן־הָעֵץ וָאֵכָל:

2. In the following passage, each word has two accents. There were two different traditions about how to divide the commandments. The Masoretes included the accents from both traditions. Christian denominations also differ on how they count the Ten Commandments. Use a lexicon to translate this passage. Look up the names and uses of the accents that are in this chapter's tables of conjunctive and disjunctive accents. What is the difference in interpretation represented by the two sets of accents?

לֹא יִהְיֶה־לְךָ<sup>°</sup> אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים עַל־פְּנֵי:  
לֹא־תַעֲשֶׂה־לְךָ<sup>°</sup> פֶּסֶל<sup>°</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> “you put”

<sup>2</sup> “she gave”

## Chapter 9

### Nouns in Construct

Hebrew does not have a word that corresponds to the English word “of” and, by the biblical period, it no longer had a genitive case ending like Greek. Hebrew uses the construct state to express such relationships between nouns.

#### The Construct State

אֶרֶץ לֶחֶם	a land <i>of</i> bread (2 Kgs 18:32)
בֵּית דָּוִד	the house <i>of</i> David (1 Sam 19:11)

The word that is in the last position—“bread” and “David” in the above examples—is called the **absolute**. It is the absolute because the word in this position does not change its form. It has the dictionary or absolute form. The word (or words) before the last position—“land” and “house” in the above examples—is called the **construct**. The construct may change its form, as is the case with “house” in the second example. Lexicons usually list construct forms.

More than one noun may be in construct.

מִשְׁכַּן בֵּית הָאֱלֹהִים	tabernacle of the house of God (1 Chr 6:33)
----------------------------	--

#### Definiteness and Indefiniteness

The absolute determines the definiteness or indefiniteness of the whole phrase. The phrase is **indefinite** if the absolute is indefinite as in the first example above. “A” is the article in English that indicates a noun is indefinite.

The whole phrase is **definite** if the absolute is definite. (You may want to review the definition of the definite article on page 27.) The absolute is definite if it has a definite article (the first example below), is a name (the second example), or is joined to a pronoun such as “our” or “his” (the third example).

עֶבֶד הָאֱלֹהִים	<i>the servant of the God</i> (1 Chr 6:34 ET 49)
מֶלֶךְ יִשְׂרָאֵל	<i>the king of Israel</i> (1 Sam 24:15 ET 14 )
יַד־אָבִיו	<i>the hand of his father</i> (Gen 48:17)

The construct cannot be definite if the absolute is indefinite or vice versa. Such a relationship between two nouns would not be expressed with the construct state in Hebrew but with the preposition *lamed*.

מִזְמוֹר לְדָוִד	<i>a psalm of David</i> (Ps 3:1)
------------------	----------------------------------

This then is another way of saying “of” when the absolute and construct are not either both definite or both indefinite.

Prefixes and the conjunction *וְ* may be prefixed to the construct:

בְּאֶרֶץ־כְּנָעַן	<i>in the land of Canaan</i> (Gen 13:12)
וְאֶרֶץ כְּנָעַן	<i>and the land of Canaan</i> (Gen 47:13)

### Indicators of the Construct

Sometimes only context indicates that a word is in construct. Often, however, the Masoretes indicate that a word is in construct in one or more ways.

A **maqquph**, the horizontal line in some of the above examples, may join the construct to the following word or words.

The word may have a special construct ending if it is **feminine singular** or **masculine plural**.

מְלָכֵי מִדְיָן	<i>the kings of Midian</i> (Num 31:8)
-----------------	---------------------------------------

Study the endings in the following table carefully:

GN	Absolute		Construct	
ms	מֶלֶךְ	king	מֶלֶךְ	king of
fs	מַלְכָּה	queen	מַלְכָּת	queen of
mp	מְלָכִים	kings	מְלָכֵי	kings of
fp	מַלְכוּת	queens	מַלְכוּת	queens of

For many common nouns, the vowels in the construct differ from the vowels in the absolute form of the noun. **בֵּית**, for example, is the construct of **בֵּית**. The root is usually still recognizable.

The word in construct may have a conjunctive Masoretic accent. The conjunctive accents indicate a close relationship with the following word. They may indicate a construct or some other joining of words.

### **The Meaning of the Construct**

The meaning of the construct is ambiguous in Hebrew. English phrases with “of” are similarly ambiguous. An example is the phrase “love of God.” This may mean “someone’s love of God,” or “God’s love for someone,” or “divine love.” The word God in the absolute state may be a subject, an object, or an adjective. The interpreter of Biblical Hebrew who is aware of these possible meanings can look for indications in the context of the specific meaning or meanings.

English uses “of” constructions less often than Hebrew uses the construct, so translating every construct relationship with “of” would sound peculiar to an English speaker. It may be helpful to note that, in translating into English, reading the words in reverse order to the Hebrew often produces a translation that sounds more English—“God’s house” rather than “the house of God.”



### Suffixed Pronouns

Nouns can take suffixed pronouns. They are the ones you have already learned with prepositions. Suffixed pronouns usually express possession in Hebrew: “my house.” The suffixes are usually attached to the construct form of the noun.

יְדֵיכֶם                      your hands

In addition, the noun may add a helping vowel before the suffixed pronoun.

בְּנוֹתֶיהָ                      her daughters

### Finding Nouns in BDB

In order to recognize a word and look it up in BDB, you need to know the three-letter root. To do this, remove markers for gender and number, prepositions, and suffixed pronouns. You may still have more than three letters, because vowel letters, prefixes, or suffixes have been added to create the noun.

Often nouns are created by adding vowels to the root. Sometimes the vowel letters ו and י are inserted.

Noun		Root
מֶלֶךְ	king	מלך
נָבִיא	prophet	נבא
אֹיֵב	enemy	איב

Frequently מ, sometimes ת, and rarely א, ה, and י are prefixed to roots to form nouns.

Noun		Root
מִזְבֵּחַ	altar	זבח
תּוֹרָה	law	ירה
אֶצְבַּע	finger	צבע

These may be tricky for beginners because the prefixes are similar to common verb prefixes.

In addition, nouns may add endings to a root.

Noun		Root
מִצְרַיִם	Egyptian	מִצַּר
זִכְרוֹן	memorial	זָכַר
מַלְכוּת	reign	מָלַךְ

The observant reader may notice that certain vowel patterns and endings are characteristic of certain types of nouns. The ending יַ- in the first example is used for the name of a people or land similar to “-ian” or “-ite” in English. The ending יִת- in the second example is used to form abstract nouns. The ending יָן- (or יִת-) is used for abstract nouns, as in the third example, and for diminutive nouns, שֶׁמֶשׁוֹן “Samson” = “Little Sun,” and adjectives, רִאשׁוֹן “first.”

Several suffixes may originally have come from feminine endings but came to be used for abstract nouns. These include יִת-, יַת- and rarely יִת-.

Noun		Root
מַלְכוּת	reign	מָלַךְ
רִאשִׁית	beginning	רָאשׁ

There are, of course, other ways letters may be added to form nouns, but these are the most common.

The opposite problem in finding a root is having too few letters. After you have removed all the vowels, markers, prefixes, and suffixes from a noun, you may be left with only two letters. BDB may list these in alphabetical order when a three-letter root is uncertain or unknown in Hebrew. Some examples are in the following table.

Noun		Root
בֵּן	son	בן
יָד	hand	יד

In other cases, the noun may have a missing letter. These are often the same letters that are missing in verbs. For example, with a **III-he** noun the he<sup>3</sup> may be present, replaced by a yod or absent:

Noun		Root
שָׁנָה	year	שנה
אָב	father	אבה
גּוֹי	people	גוה

Many commonly occurring two-letter nouns are listed by BDB under **geminate** roots. The name geminate is related to the word Gemini, “twins.” Geminate roots have the same last two root letters. While nouns from these roots are common, verbs are rare and therefore are not treated until Chapter 34.

Noun		Root
לֵב	heart	לבב
הַר	hill	הרר
רָע	evil	רעע

In some cases, vowel letters may represent root letters and therefore are not removed to find the root. Nouns from **hollow**

roots are frequent. In these nouns, the vowel letter is not removed to find the root.

Noun		Root
טוב	good	טוב
קול	voice	קול

A few two-letter nouns are from **II-nun** roots.

Noun		Root
אף	anger	אנף
אשה	woman	אנש

Nuns sometimes assimilate in verbs, but not usually in the second position.

Nouns that come from roots listed as **I-yod** (including original **I-vav**) may have a vowel letter after one of the noun prefixes.

Noun		Root
תורה	law	ירה
מועד	appointed time	יעד
תולדות	generations	ילד
תירוש	new wine	ירש

Finally, a noun may, as in the above examples, have more than one of the above vowel letters, prefixes, suffixes, or missing letters.

When a missing letter might make it difficult to locate a noun, BDB often provides a cross reference, as mentioned before. The note on page one of BDB is an example:

This means for the word אָב “father” look under the second root אבה.

Only a few of the most common nouns in the vocabularies and exercises are formed by adding prefixes or suffixes or have missing letters. When you have difficulty finding the root of a noun, you may want to review this summary.

### Vocabulary

אָדוֹן	lord, master
אָח	brother
אָחֵר אַחֲרֵי	behind, after
בַּת	daughter
בָּנוֹת	daughters (irregular plural)
לֵב לֶבֶב	heart (short and long form)
מָה מַּה מֵה	what? how?
נַפֶּשׁ	(f) life, self, being; throat
עֶבֶד	servant, slave
עֵין	(f) eye; spring, well
עָלָה	go up
קָרָא	call
שָׁלַח	stretch out, let go, send
שָׁם	there
שֵׁם	name
שָׁנָה	year

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

וַיְהִי דְבַר־יְהוָה אֵלַי (Jer 1:11)

וַאֲלֵה שְׁמוֹת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל (Exod 1:1)

וַיֹּאמֶר עֶבֶד אַבְרָהָם אֲנִכִּי: (Gen 24:34)

אָבוֹא וְאַרְאֶה<sup>1</sup> פָּנַי אֱלֹהִים: (Ps 42:3 ET 2)

וְאַתָּה אֲדֹנָי הַמֶּלֶךְ עֵינֵי כָל־יִשְׂרָאֵל עָלֶיךָ (1 Kgs 1:20)

כָּל־הַנִּפְשׁוֹת לִי הִנֵּה כֹנֶפֶשׁ הָאֵב (Ezek 18:4)

וּכְנֶפֶשׁ הַבֵּן לִי־הִנֵּה

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to use a lexicon to translate some of the words. Chart the verbs.

וַיָּבֹא אֶל־הָר הָאֱלֹהִים (Exod 3:1)

שְׁנַת שְׁבַתוֹן יִהְיֶה לָאָרֶץ (Lev 25:5)

כִּי־גָדוֹל יוֹם־יְהוָה (Joel 2:11)

מִה־יִּקְרָא־לוֹ וְכָל־אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא־לוֹ הָאָדָם (Gen 2:19)

נֶפֶשׁ חַיָּה הוּא שְׁמוֹ:

וַיָּבֹאוּ אַנְשֵׁי יְהוּדָה וַיִּמְשְׁחוּ־שָׁם אֶת־דָּוִד (2 Sam 2:4)

לַמֶּלֶךְ עַל־בֵּית יְהוּדָה

<sup>1</sup> The vowel points are for a stem which you have not studied yet, but you should be able to recognize the root and translate it adequately.

## Chapter 10

### Qal Perfect, Part I

The second major conjugation in Hebrew is the perfect.

#### Perfect Conjugation

The perfect conjugation adds **suffixes** to the end of the stem. The suffixes to the stem indicate the person, gender and number (PGN) of the subject. (Some introductory grammars refer to them as affixes or affirmatives to distinguish them from the suffixed pronouns.) The **subject** is the person, place or thing that does the action of the verb. As mentioned above, a separate subject, as is customary in English, is the exception in Hebrew.

The conjugation of the **Qal perfect** is as follows:

PGN	Form	PGN	Form
3ms	שָׁמַר	3cp	שָׁמְרוּ
3fs	שָׁמְרָה		
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	2mp	שָׁמַרְתֶּם
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	2fp	שָׁמַרְתֶּן
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ

Note: the gamets ( ך ) under the first root letter occurs in most forms and so is a good **indicator** when you see it in reading that you have a Qal perfect.

In the lexicon the vowels of the 3ms form are put on the root. If this form does not have all the letters of the root, then the vowels of the infinitive are used. (The infinitive will be introduced later.)

A number of roots take an i-class or u-class vowel under the middle root letter. Many of these are statives.

English does not distinguish gender (masculine or feminine) in the second person as Hebrew does, so the translation is always “you.” English also does not distinguish number in the second person. The translation is “you” whether the number in Hebrew is singular or plural.

In the 3fs and 3cp forms, the sheva could be either silent or vocal and either close the previous syllable or open a new one. Thus the qamets could be translated either as a long *a* or a short *o*. The **meteg**, the small vertical line beside the qamets ( , ), is to indicate that it is a long *a*.

The **suffixes** of the perfect are the same in all stems. Except for a few minor alterations, they remain unchanged on all verbal roots in all stems. They are, therefore, reliable **indicators** when you are reading that the form you are looking at is a perfect. While the system of indicators reduces the need to memorize future conjugations, you should memorize the Qal perfect on the root שׁוּב in the previous table, taking note of the suffixes in the following table which will function as indicators of the perfect in future conjugations:

PGN	Suffix	PGN	Suffix
3ms	(none)	3cp	ִיְ—
3fs	ִיְ—		
2ms	ִיְ— (or יְִיְ—)	2mp	ִיְ—
2fs	ִיְ—	2fp	ִיְ—
1cs	ִיְ—	1cp	ִיְ—

### III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs

When perfect verbs are formed with III-he<sup>3</sup> roots, the he<sup>3</sup> can be missing or be represented by a hireq yod. In the development of the Hebrew language III-yod roots became III-he<sup>3</sup> roots. The yod reappears or more correctly is retained in first and second person forms of the perfect. Because the root ends with a he<sup>3</sup>, the 3ms



form looks like a 3fs form. This may be why the 3fs form distinguishes itself by adding another feminine marker, the tav. The he<sup>3</sup> is missing altogether in the 3cp. With the exception of the 3fs form, therefore, the **indicators** of a III-he<sup>3</sup> verb are the same in the perfect as in the imperfect.

3ms	עָשָׂה	3cp	עָשׂוּ
3fs	עָשְׂתָה		
2ms	עָשִׂיתָ <sup>1</sup>	2mp	עָשִׂיתֶם <sup>2</sup>
2fs	עָשִׂיתְּ	2fp	עָשִׂיתֵן
1cs	עָשִׂיתִי	1cp	עָשִׂינוּ

### Vav Consecutive

In Chapter 6 we saw that the normal way to indicate past action was the vav consecutive prefixed to the imperfect (וַיִּקָּם “he arose”). Similarly, the normal way to indicate that an action takes place in the future in Hebrew is by prefixing וַ to the perfect. (An alternate form is וּ.) Note, however, that the vowel pointing is the same as for the conjunction –וַ “and.” With the perfect it may be translated “and.” Often, though, some other word (“so,” “then,” etc.), or a comma (,), semicolon (;), or capitalization is a better translation in English.

וּשְׁבַתְּ

You will return (Deut 4:30)

<sup>1</sup> The weak dagesh that was present in the tav in the previous tables is no longer present, because the tav now comes after a vowel and a weak dagesh will not follow a vowel.

<sup>2</sup> The previous tables had a sheva here. Gutturals do not take a vocal sheva. They take a ḥateph-pataḥ or in few cases a ḥateph-segol instead. Despite minor changes such as that mentioned in this and in the previous footnote, the perfect is easily recognizable from the suffixes.

## Vocabulary

גָּדוֹל	great
גּוֹי	people, nation
דֶּרֶךְ	way, road, journey, custom
הָר	mountain
טוֹב	good (adj); be good (verb); goodness (noun)
כַּאֲשֶׁר	as
כֵּן	thus, so
יָמִין	right, upright; thus, so
מַיִם	water
מִצְרַיִם	Egypt (מִצְרַיִם “Egyptian”)
נָשָׂא	lift up, bear, carry
עָבַר	pass over, transgress
עָמַד	stand
קוּם	rise, stand
רֹאשׁ	head

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following and chart the verbs.

וַעֲשִׂיתֶם אֹתָם וַיִּשְׁבְּתֶם עַל־הָאָרֶץ (Lev 25:18)

וַיֵּשְׁבוּ בָּהּ יְהוּדָה וְכָל־עָרֶיךָ (Jer 31:24)

וַאֲמַרְתָּ לְבָנְךָ עֲבָדִים הָיוּ לִפְרָעָה בְּמִצְרַיִם (Deut 6:21)

אַתֶּם רְאִיתֶם אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְמִצְרַיִם (Exod 19:4)

וְהָיָה אֲנִי אֵלַיךָ מֵאֵתָּךְ וְרוּחַ יְהוָה יִשְׁאָף עַל אֲשֶׁר לֹא-אֲדַע (1 Kings 18:12)

כִּי אֶל-אֶרֶצִי וְאֶל-מִוְלַדְתִּי<sup>4</sup> תֵּלֵךְ וּלְקַחְתָּ אִשָּׁה לְבָנִי לְיִצְחָק: (Gen 24:4)

2. Read aloud and translate the following. In order to translate, you will need to look up some words in a lexicon. Chart the verbs.

וְאֲנִי אֵצֶא וְעַמְדָּתִי לְיַד-אָבִי בַשָּׂדֶה אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה שֹׁם וְאֲנִי אֲדַבֵּר<sup>5</sup> בָּךְ אֶל-אָבִי וְרָאִיתִי מָה וְהִגַּדְתִּי<sup>6</sup> לָךְ: (1 Sam 19:3)

וַיִּקְרָאוּ אֶל-לוֹט וַיֹּאמְרוּ לוֹ אֵיךְ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר-בָּאוּ אֵלֶיךָ (Gen 19:5)

וּדְבַרְתָּ<sup>7</sup> אֵלָיו וְשָׁמַת אֶת-הַדְּבָרִים בְּפִיו (Exod 4:15)

וְהָיִיתָם כְּאֱלֹהִים יֹדְעִי<sup>8</sup> טוֹב וְרַע: (Gen 3:5)

<sup>3</sup> “the spirit of”

<sup>4</sup> “my kindred”

<sup>5</sup> “I will speak”

<sup>6</sup> “I will tell” (Perfect of a stem you will learn later.)

<sup>7</sup> “you will speak”

<sup>8</sup> “knowing” (A conjugation you will learn later.)

## Chapter 11

### Qal Perfect, Part II

#### Meaning of the Perfect

The name of the perfect, like the name of the imperfect, is misleading because the English perfect has a much narrower range of meanings than does the Hebrew perfect. For this reason some grammars prefer to use terms that refer to form, such as affix conjugation, or to a more adequate definition of meaning, for example, perfective conjugation.

In the Hebrew verb system, the perfect contrasts with the imperfect. But, as we saw with the imperfect, scholars debate its meaning when it stands alone without a vav. Older Jewish grammarians and some contemporary scholars, who understand the imperfect as a present and future tense, understand the perfect as *a past tense*. But the perfect may need to be translated with a present or future tense depending on the context.

Other Hebrew grammarians, who instead understand the imperfect as describing an incomplete action, understand the perfect as describing *a complete action*. The tense is determined by the context. The name perfect and the description of the perfect in some grammars as a completed action is misleading. This is true in English grammar, but in Hebrew, the action of the verb may still be incomplete from the perspective of the timeframe of the narrative. The name perfective would be grammatically more accurate, but this book retains the name perfect because that is the name most commonly used in lexicons and reference works. The Hebrew perfect, however, describes not a completed action but instead an action viewed as *a complete, whole situation, or event*. Used with a dynamic verb it describes an event, either long or short. In an individual use the emphasis may be on the beginning, middle, entirety, or end of a complete event. Whereas the

imperfect represents a progressive, repeated, or dependant situation, the perfect is used when viewing a situation as a whole.

### Hollow Verbs

The vowel pointing of the perfect is the same for both **II-vav** and **II-yod**. Generally there is much overlap and perhaps confusion between the two types of roots.

Some hollow verbs, such as שׁוּב (turn, return) and שֵׁם (set, place) have a-class vowels under the first letter:

3ms	שָׁב	3cp	שָׁבוּ
3fs	שָׁבָה		
2ms	שָׁבַתָּ	2mp	שָׁבַתְּם
2fs	שָׁבַתְּ	2fp	שָׁבַתְן
1cs	שָׁבַתִּי	1cp	שָׁבַנוּ

Notice that the stress is on the second-to-last vowel in many of the forms. This is an **indicator** of a hollow verb.

Some other verbs, such as מוֹת (die) or בוֹשׁ (be ashamed) take i-class or u-class vowels in several perfect forms. The remaining forms have the same a-class vowels as in the table above. These are often called **statives** because they describe states of being, (for example, dead or ashamed). A complete table is not necessary, as these forms can be identified in reading by the perfect suffixes, by having only two letters, and in many cases by having the accent on the second-to-last vowel.

### The Root נתן

This frequently occurring verb is the *only* III-nun verb that shows assimilation of the final nun before suffixes beginning with tav ת.

זָקַנְתִּי	I am old
נָתַתִּי	I have given
נָתַתְּם	you (mp) have given

## Suffixed Pronouns

The perfect takes the same suffixed pronouns you have seen on prepositions, nouns, and the imperfect. The endings and vowels of the perfect show some changes with the addition of suffixed pronouns. As a reference, the following table summarizes the forms of the perfect before pronoun suffixes.

3ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	3cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ
3fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ – שָׁמַרְתָּ		
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	2mp	שָׁמַרְתֶּם
2fs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	2fp	שָׁמַרְתֶּן
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ

Note that these forms are difficult to identify in reading because the qamets, normally an indicator of the perfect, is reduced to a sheva and many of the endings of the perfect are changed. Moreover, the endings in this table are often written defectively. Thus the 2fs suffix –תִּי– is frequently written –תְּ– and the 2mp suffix –תֶּם– is frequently –תְּ–.

The suffixed pronouns function as an object of the verb. As we saw with suffixed pronouns on the imperfect, they can be suffixed either to the end of the verb or the sign of the definite direct object, with no apparent difference in meaning.

שָׁמַרְתָּהּ	you kept her
שָׁמַרְתָּ אוֹתָהּ	you kept her

## Vocabulary

אַלֶּף	thousand; tribe, clan
חֶרֶב	sword
יָלַד	bring forth, bear
מִזְבֵּחַ	altar
מִי	who

מָצָא	find <sup>1</sup>
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, custom, justice
נָפַל	fall
עוֹד	yet, still, again
עוֹלָם עוֹלָם	long time; forever
עַתָּה	now
פֶּה	mouth (כִּפִּי, לְפִי “according to”)
צָבָא	service in war; host, army
רָע	evil (ms noun, adj)
רָעָה	evil (fs noun)
שָׂם	set, place, put

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר־יֹשֵׁב בָּהֶן לֹוט: (Gen 19:29)

וְאֶנִּי־בָאתִי בְּדַבְרִידָּ: (Dan 10:12)

וְלֹא־לָקֶם נָבִיא עוֹד בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל כְּמוֹשֶׁה אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ  
יְהוָה פָּנִים אֶל־פָּנִים:

וְאֲנֹכִי אֶהְיֶה עִם־פִּיךָ וְעִם־פִּיהוּ וְהוֹרִיתִי אֶתְכֶם  
אֵת אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּן:

מִלֶּךְ אֱלֹהִים עַל־גּוֹיִם (Ps 47:9 ET 8)

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Hiphil stem, which will be discussed later, מָצָא can mean “present.”

<sup>2</sup> “I will teach”

<sup>3</sup> Although you have not had this verb in the vocabularies, you should be able to figure out its meaning from the noun of the same root.

(2 Kgs 23:25) וְכִמְהוּ<sup>4</sup> לֹא־הָיָה לְפָנָיו מֶלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר־שָׁב  
אֶל־יְהוָה בְּכָל־לִבָּבוֹ וּבְכָל־נַפְשׁוֹ וּבְכָל־מְאֹדוֹ<sup>5</sup> כְּכָל־  
תּוֹרַת<sup>6</sup> מֹשֶׁה וְאַחֲרָיו לֹא־קָם כְּמֹהוּ:

(Ezek 37:25) וַיֵּשְׁבוּ עַל־הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נָתַתִּי לְעַבְדֵי לַיַּעֲקֹב אֲשֶׁר  
יֵשְׁבוּ־בָהּ אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם וַיֵּשְׁבוּ עָלֶיהָ הִמָּה וּבְנֵיהֶם וּבְנֵי בְנֵיהֶם  
עַד־עוֹלָם וְדוֹר עַבְדֵי נְשִׂא<sup>7</sup> לָהֶם לְעוֹלָם:

2. Read aloud and translate the following and chart the verbs.  
You will need to look up some of the words in a lexicon.

(Gen 13:12) אַבְרָם יָשָׁב בְּאֶרֶץ־כְּנָעַן וְלוֹט יָשָׁב בְּעָרֵי הַכְּפָר

(Deut 4:44) וְזֹאת הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר־שָׂם מֹשֶׁה לְפָנָי בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל:

(Exod 20:22) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה כֹּה תֹאמַר אֶל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל  
אַתֶּם רְאִיתֶם כִּי מִן־הַשָּׁמַיִם דִּבַּרְתִּי<sup>8</sup> עִמָּכֶם:

(Isa 9:1 ET 2) רְאוּ אֹר גָּדוֹל

(Gen 3:20) וַיִּקְרָא הָאָדָם שֵׁם אִשְׁתּוֹ חַוָּה כִּי הִוא הִיְתָה  
אִם כָּל־חַי<sup>9</sup>:

3. Discuss the meaning of the perfect in the above exercises.

<sup>4</sup> “like him”

<sup>5</sup> “his strength”

<sup>6</sup> “the law of”

<sup>7</sup> “a prince”

<sup>8</sup> Although you have not had this stem, you should be able to recognize the root and translate.

<sup>9</sup> “living”



4. What is the meaning of **תָּנִיחַ** in Genesis 3:20 above and how does it contribute to the meaning of the passage?

## Chapter 12

### Textual Criticism

The Masoretic Text (MT) of 1 Samuel 13:1 literally reads: “Saul was *one year* old when he began to reign; and he reigned *two years* over Israel.” Scribes copied ancient manuscripts, including the Bible, by hand. Even though great care was taken in copying, errors crept in over time. Various types of errors or differences occur even in modern, printed Hebrew Bibles. Textual criticism tries to identify and correct these errors. As in the example above, establishing the text is often a necessary first step in translation.

Several qualifications are necessary to the traditional aim of textual criticism. First, in practice, the boundary between textual criticism and higher criticism is blurred. Textual criticism or lower criticism deals with changes during transmission (copying and recopying). Higher criticism deals with changes during writing and editing. The writer or editors, however, may have made errors or, as in the case of Jeremiah, may have written more than one text. Considering these qualifications, the aim of textual criticism is to establish the original or traditional text.

The following sections are a step-by-step guide to using the footnotes in *BHS* for textual criticism. The first section, “Reading *BHS*” Footnotes,” explains how to read the footnotes in *BHS* dealing with textual criticism. The second section, “Causes of Textual Corruption,” shows how choosing between the different readings or making corrections requires knowledge of the scribes and the types of errors they made. The final section, “Choosing between Readings,” contains guidelines for choosing the original reading.

### Reading *BHS*'s Footnotes

The **text-critical apparatus** is another name for these footnotes. A small raised letter beside a Hebrew word indicates a **text-critical note**. When two of the same raised letters appear in a verse, this indicates a note referring to all the words between the two raised letters.

In *BHS*, the notes are at the bottom of the page below the Masora Magna. In the case of 1 Samuel 13:1 there is a small, raised *a* before the first Hebrew word. Appearing at the bottom of the page, on the third line of text-critical notes, is **Cp 13,1** (in boldface type), which is the abbreviation for Chapter 13, verse 1. A series of abbreviations follow. A key to the abbreviations, "Sigla et Compendia Apparatum," appears in the beginning of *BHS*. *An English Key* translated by H. P. Rüger is available from United Bible Societies and is reprinted in *A Simplified Guide to BHS\** by Scott.

In the footnotes, the editors of *BHS* list different readings of the text in manuscripts or versions that they consider significant. In the above example, the **text** is 1 Samuel. **Manuscripts** are Hebrew copies of 1 Samuel. (The word manuscript may also refer to individual copies in Hebrew or other ancient languages.) **Versions** are ancient translations of 1 Samuel into other languages, such as Greek and Syriac. The text-critical notes for 1 Samuel 13:1, for example, have the abbreviation **Θ** for the Septuagint, an ancient Greek version of the Bible, and **Ⲛ** for the Peshitta, the Syriac version. The small raised letters after **Θ** in the first note ("a") indicate individual copies or manuscripts of the Septuagint.

An appendix at the back of this book lists *BHS*' abbreviations, signs, and symbols that appear in the exercises.

The testimony of versions must be carefully evaluated. **Retroversion** refers to the process of reconstructing the Hebrew manuscript that a version translated. Some versions or parts of versions are very free translations characterized by many additions. Because they so often add interpretations, we cannot safely figure out the Hebrew that lies behind their translation. Their witness is of little use for textual criticism. Even fairly literal translations may be attempting to understand or interpret a difficult passage, rather

than witnessing to a different Hebrew text. In 1 Samuel 13, for example, the translators of the Septuagint and Peshitta may have made additions or changes to create a translation that made sense. The translation therefore would not be an authentic witness to a Hebrew manuscript different from the MT.

### Causes of Textual Corruption

In order to work backward from several readings to the original it is necessary to understand how errors occur. One guideline of textual criticism points out that the shorter reading is preferable. Scribes were more likely to add rather than omit something. Thus, a shorter reading is more likely to be the original.

Different types of textual corruption are additions that make the text longer, changes that do not alter the length of the text, and omissions that make the text shorter.

**Additions.** A scribe may unintentionally add to a text, for example, by inserting words like **לְ** for correctness or clarity, or **לְ** for emphasis. Scribes might also add standard phrases like “servant of the LORD” or phrases remembered from other parts of the passage they are translating. There may also be mechanical reasons for additions.

**Dittography** means “writing again.” A scribe accidentally writes a letter, several letters, a word, or many words twice. The MT of Leviticus 20:10 writes the same group of words twice:

A man who commits adultery with the wife of *a man who commits adultery with the wife of* his neighbor should be put to death . . .

This sounds rather peculiar. The note in *BHS* tells us that some copies of the Septuagint do not have the italicized words above. It suggests deleting these words because they were added by dittography.

**Glosses** are notes that a scribe may write in the margins or between the lines to explain difficult words. Another scribe may accidentally copy the gloss into the line.

**Changes.** Several types of changes do not change the length of the text. A scribe may confuse one letter for another. You may already have had trouble with this in your reading and writing. A list of commonly confused letters follows:

ב	and	כ
ד	and	ד <sup>1</sup>
ה	and	ח
ה	and	ת
ו	and	י
ע	and	צ
כ	and	נ

The square letters *BHS* uses were taken over for writing Hebrew from the closely related language Aramaic. Confusion of similar letters may date back before the introduction of Aramaic square letters to Old Hebrew scripts. The NJPS translates Ezekiel 3:12: “Then a spirit carried me away, and behind me I heard a great roaring sound: ‘*Blessed* is the Presence of the LORD, in His place,’ with the sound of the wings of the creatures beating against one another, and the sound of the wheels beside them—a great roaring sound.” (*Italics mine.*) The meaning and syntax are awkward. If an ancient scribe confused the Old Hebrew kaph in בָּרוּךְ “blessed” with the similar Old Hebrew mem, then the original would have been מָרוּם “when rose up.” Thus the NJPS suggests this emendation in a footnote, and the NRSV translates: “Then the spirit lifted me up, and as the glory of the LORD rose from its place, I heard behind me the sound of loud rumbling.”

---

<sup>1</sup> See Genesis 22:13, footnote a.

Below is a list of letters easily confused in various Old Hebrew scripts:

י	and	ה
ס	and	ת
כ	and	נ
ע	and	ד
ב	and	ר
ה	and	ח
מ	and	נ

Also common in writing is the **transposition** of two letters. The order of two letters is reversed in writing. The use of consonants to indicate vowels in Hebrew also makes it possible for a vowel to be confused with a consonant.

**Omissions.** As with all text-critical principles, “the shorter reading is preferable” is only a guideline. The longer reading may be original, especially when we understand the reason for leaving something out.

**Haplography** or “single writing” is one kind of omission error. Haplography occurs when two identical or similar letters, groups of letters, or words are copied only once by mistake.

A second type of omission is **parablepsis**, meaning “oversight,” whereby a scribe overlooks or misses a section of the manuscript being copied. The most common cause of such an oversight is **homoioteleuton** or “similar ending.” When words in close proximity have similar or identical endings, the eye of the scribe may pass from one to the other, leaving out the words in between. In *BHS*, the editors printed Joshua 21:36–37 in small letters. The footnote at the beginning of the verse tells us that these verses are not in many Hebrew manuscripts and versions, including the Leningrad Codex, but are present in many other Hebrew manuscripts and versions. The error occurred when a scribe copied the end of verse 35, found the same words: “with its

pasture lands—four towns,” at the end of verse 37, and began copying verse 38, thereby leaving out verse 36.

**Homoioarkton**, meaning “similar beginning,” is a less common type of oversight. Two words or phrases with similar beginnings cause an omission.

Occasionally a scribe might change a text, intentionally or unintentionally, for reasons of style or theology. For example, scribes might change a rare word for a more common word (see Gen 22:12, note a; Gen 22:23, note b) or might modify a passage to make it conform to their understanding (see Gen 22:2, note a).

**Harmonizations** occur when a scribe changes a passage to make it consistent with a similar passage elsewhere in the Bible.

### **Choosing between Readings**

External criteria are less reliable than internal criteria for choosing the original reading. External criteria are the manuscripts and versions that witness to different readings.

**External Criteria.** In textual criticism, as in a court of law, some witnesses are more reliable than others. Judging a witness’ reliability is a complex issue that involves extensive knowledge of that witness. Although one might think an older manuscript would be closer to the original, poor copies can be made at an early date and careful copies later. Thus, reliability is more important than age.

For more detailed discussions of witnesses and their reliability, consult the bibliography. According to Würthwein, however, the relative reliability of the witnesses can be ranked in descending order for beginners. Würthwein’s ranking is in the table on the next page. Those at the top are generally considered more reliable than those at the bottom. In the right column are the symbols (or **sigla**) used in the text-critical apparatus of *BHS* to indicate these manuscripts and versions.

---

Masoretic Text	ℳ
Samaritan Pentateuch	ⲙ
Septuagint	Ⲙ
Aquila	α
Symmachus	σ
Theodotian	θ
Syriac	ⲥ
Targums	ⲡ
Vulgate	ⲟ
Old Latin	ℓ
Sahidic	Sa
Ethiopic	Ⲛ
Arabic	ⲁ
Armenian	Arm

A reading with witnesses from several families and geographical areas is preferable. **Families** are groups of manuscripts and versions that have similar additions, deletions, and so on. The Masoretic Text, the Samaritan Pentateuch, and the Septuagint represent the three types of families.

Witnesses should be weighed, not counted. One reliable witness outweighs three unreliable witnesses. Nevertheless, even the most reliable tradition may have erroneous readings and unreliable witnesses may preserve an original reading. Internal criteria, therefore, are more important for choosing the original reading than external criteria.

**Internal Criteria.** The basic principle of textual criticism is “Which is most likely to have changed into the other?” This gives rise to the two basic and most important guidelines for choosing a reading: (1) *the more difficult reading is to be preferred*, and (2) *the shorter reading is to be preferred*.

The beginning student can learn to read the footnotes in *BHS* and use these two principles. A difficult reading here does not mean so problematic that it is unintelligible or impossible to



understand. The preferable reading is the one that is an unusual, poetic use of the language. A scribe would probably change words in such a reading to make it more understandable to most readers. Likewise, a shorter reading is not preferable when you can show a reason like haplography (a very common error) that would make the text shorter.

**Emendation** is proposing an original reading that is not witnessed to by the manuscripts or versions. When it is evident that none of the witnesses has the original reading, emendation may be necessary. Textual critics have developed controls for making emendations. A person proposing an emendation should be able to show how the emendation gave rise to all the other readings (through haplography, dittography, or other causes). The emendation should also fit the context of the biblical book.

Although these abstract rules can make textual criticism sound like an objective science, the application of these rules is subjective and textual criticism is more of an art than a science.

## Exercises

In order to practice using the text-critical notes in *BHS*, read the text-critical notes on the passages below. They are all passages you have already translated in previous chapters. The text-critical notes, which would be at the bottom of the page in *BHS*, are in parentheses after the text. The abbreviations of *BHS* used in this textbook are in Appendix E.

## Chapter 3

שְׁמוּאֵל עִם־יְהוָה: ס (1 Sam 2:21)  
(<sup>d</sup> pc Mss אֵת, cf 85ט.)

אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם<sup>a</sup> עַל־הָאָרֶץ (2 Chr 6:18)  
(<sup>a-a</sup> > 1 R 8,27)

כִּי מִלֶּךָ<sup>a</sup> כָּל־הָאָרֶץ אֱלֹהִים (Ps 47:8 ET 7)  
(<sup>a</sup> mlt Mss + עַל)

(Gen 2:4) בְּיוֹם עֲשׂוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים<sup>c</sup> אֶרֶץ וְשָׁמַיִם:  
(שָׁמַיִם וָאֶרֶץ<sup>c-c</sup>)

### Chapter 5

(Deut 34:4) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֵלָיו<sup>a</sup> זֹאת הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר<sup>b2</sup> נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי  
לְאַבְרָהָם לְיִצְחָק וְלִיעֲקֹב  
(לאבְתִּיךָ + וְ<sup>b</sup> || לְמֹשֶׁה<sup>a</sup> = Μωϋσῆς πρὸς ὅ<sup>a</sup>)

(Jer 30:4) וַאֲלֵה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר<sup>3</sup> יְהוָה אֶל־יִשְׂרָאֵל  
<sup>a</sup>וְאֶל־יְהוֹנָדָה<sup>a-add</sup>:

### Chapter 6

(Exod 4:18) וַיֵּלֶךְ מֹשֶׁה וַיָּשָׁב אֶל־יִתְרָא<sup>a</sup>  
(יִתְרוֹ<sup>a</sup> Ms וְ<sup>a</sup> Iothor)

### Chapter 7

(Gen 3:6) וַתִּקַּח מִפְּרִי<sup>4</sup> וַתֹּאכַל וַתֵּן גַּם־לְאִשְׁתָּהּ עִמָּה  
וַיֹּאכְל<sup>b</sup>:  
(כֻּלּוֹ<sup>b</sup> וְ<sup>a</sup>)

### Chapter 9

(Ps 42:3 ET 2) אָבּוֹא וְאַרְאֶה<sup>b5</sup> פָּנַי<sup>c</sup> אֱלֹהִים:  
(וְאַרְאֶה<sup>b</sup> pc Mss || <sup>c</sup> S + suff 2 sg)

(Exod 3:1) וַיִּבֹּא אֶל־הַר הָאֱלֹהִים<sup>a</sup> חֲרֵבָה<sup>6</sup>:  
(<sup>a</sup> > Ṫ\*)

### Chapter 10

(Lev 25:18) וַעֲשִׂיתֶם אִתְּם<sup>c</sup> וַיִּשְׁבַּתֶּם עַל־הָאֶרֶץ  
(אֲנִי יְהוָה + <sup>c</sup>)

(Exod 19:4) אַתֶּם רְאִיתֶם אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְמִצְרַיִם<sup>a</sup>  
(בְּמִ<sup>a</sup> mlt Mss Ṫ<sup>Ms</sup>)

<sup>2</sup> "I promised"

<sup>3</sup> "spoke"

<sup>4</sup> "some of its fruit"

<sup>5</sup> The vowel points are for a stem that you have not studied yet, but you should be able to recognize the root and translate adequately.

<sup>6</sup> "Horeb"

כִּי<sup>a</sup> אֶל-אֶרְצִי וְאֶל-מוֹלְדֹתַי<sup>7</sup> תֵּלֶךְ וְלִקְחָתָּ  
 אִשָּׁה לְבִנִּי לְיִצְחָק;  
 (כִּי־אִם<sup>a</sup> Seb mlt Mss וּמִי־אִם)

## Chapter 11

מִלֶּךְ<sup>8</sup> אֱלֹהִים עַל־גּוֹיִם  
 (כֹּל־<sup>a</sup> 2 Mss וְכֹל־<sup>RAal</sup> + כֹּל־)

---

<sup>7</sup> “my kindred”

<sup>8</sup> Although you have not had this verb in the vocabularies, you should be able to figure out its meaning from the noun of the same root.

## Chapter 13

### Adjectives

Adjectives are words that modify a noun by limiting, defining, or qualifying it. In the phrase “a wise woman,” for example, “wise” is the adjective. In English adjectives sometimes end with -able, -ous, -er, or -est and are recognized by their position in the sentence, whether or not they have these endings. An English speaker identifies “wise” as an adjective because it comes between the article “a” and the noun “woman.”

#### Gender and Number

Hebrew uses endings, similar to those for nouns, in order to denote the gender and number of adjectives.

ms	גָּדוֹל	mp	גָּדוֹלִים
fs	גָּדוֹלָה	fp	גָּדוֹלוֹת

As with endings added to nouns, the vowels of the adjective may change when the endings are added.

#### Uses of the Adjective

The **attributive** adjective attributes something to a noun. It agrees with the noun in gender, number, and definiteness. A noun is definite if it has a definite article, is a name, or has a suffixed pronoun. An attributive adjective usually follows the noun it modifies and is definite if it has a definite article.

גוֹי גָּדוֹל  
הַיָּם הַגָּדוֹל

a great nation (Gen 12:2)

the great sea (Num 34:6)

אֵשׁ הַגְּדֹלָה	his great fire (Deut 4:36)
יָמִים רַבִּים	many days (Gen 21:34)

Several adjectives may modify one noun. When demonstratives (Chapter 5) appear in a series of adjectives, they come last in the series.

לְעִיר הַגְּדֹלָה הַזֹּאת	to this great city (Jer 22:8)
---------------------------	-------------------------------

The **predicate adjective** functions as a verb. A predicate is a verb and its modifiers. In English translation, a form of the verb “to be” is necessary. The predicate adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies, but does not have an article. It usually comes before the noun.

טוֹבָה הָאָרֶץ	The land is good (Deut 1:25)
רַבִּים עַתָּה עַם הָאָרֶץ	the people of the land are now many (Exod 5:5)

Often an adjective is the **absolute** with a noun(s) in construct.

בֵּית גְּדוֹל	a great house (2 Kings 25:9)
---------------	------------------------------

Adjectives may also be used as **nouns**.

הַרְשָׁע	the guilty (Deut 25:1)
----------	------------------------

## Vocabulary

אֹהֶל	tent
אוּ	or
אֵשׁ	fire
בֵּין בֵּין	interval (noun); between (prep)
בָּנָה	build

בָּרַךְ	bless
דָּם	blood
קֹדֶשׁ	holy
קוֹל	voice, sound
רַב	much, many; captain, chief
שָׂר	official, leader, prince
שָׁמַיִם	heavens, sky
שָׁמַר	keep, watch, guard
תָּוֶךְ	midst, middle
בְּתוֹךְ	in the midst, middle; into, among, through
תַּחַת	beneath, under, instead of (prep)

## Exercises

1. In this and all future exercises, some of the text-critical notes from *BHS* will be included in parentheses. Read these notes by looking up the meaning of the abbreviations in Appendix E (or in Ruger's *Guide* or Scott). Be prepared to discuss what text you would translate and why. Begin, as usual, by reading the exercises aloud, translating the Hebrew, and charting the verbs.

וַאֲעֲשֶׂה לְנָוִי גִדּוֹל (Gen 12:2)

וְאֲנִשִּׁי-קֹדֶשׁ תִּהְיוּן לִי (Exod 22:30)

לֹא-יֵאָכֵל<sup>a</sup> בִּי-קֹדֶשׁ הֵם: (Exod 29:33)

(<sup>a</sup> Ⓢ[ט] + Ⓢπ' αὐτῶν “from them” [Ⓢ<sup>B</sup> -τοῦ “it”])

וַיָּשֶׁב-שָׁם יְרֵמְיָהוּ יָמִים רַבִּים: (Jer 37:16)

(Joel 4:17 ET 3:17) וַיִּדְעֻם כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם  
שֹׁכֵן בְּצִיּוֹן הִר־קֹדֶשׁ וְהִיְתָה יְרוּשָׁלַם  
קֹדֶשׁ וְזָרִים<sup>2</sup> לֹא־יַעֲבֹדוּבָה עוֹד:

(Jer 16:10) וְהָיָה כִּי תִגִּיד<sup>3</sup> לָעָם הַזֶּה אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה וְאָמְרוּ אֵלֶיךָ עַל־מָה<sup>4</sup> דִּבֶּר יְהוָה עָלֵינוּ  
אֵת כָּל־הָרָעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת

(Num 5:17) וְלָקַח הַכֹּהֵן מִיָּם קֹדְשִׁים

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to look up some words in a lexicon. Chart the verbs.

(Ps 95:3) כִּי אֵל גָּדוֹל יְהוָה וּמִלֶּךְ<sup>a</sup> גָּדוֹל  
עַל־כָּל־אֱלֹהִים: (מ<sup>a</sup> pc Mss S)

(2 Kgs 22:8) וַיֹּאמֶר חִלְקִיָּהוּ הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל עַל־שָׁפָן  
הַסֹּפֵר סֵפֶר הַתּוֹרָה מִצָּאתַי בְּבֵית יְהוָה וַיִּתֵּן  
חִלְקִיָּה אֶת־הַסֵּפֶר אֶל־שָׁפָן וַיִּקְרָאָהוּ: (א<sup>a</sup> = אֵל, sic mlt Mss cf 6)

<sup>1</sup> An infinitive construct meaning “dwell.”

<sup>2</sup> “strangers”

<sup>3</sup> “you will tell”

<sup>4</sup> “spoke” (Piel perfect)

## Chapter 14

### Numbers

There are two main series of numbers in Hebrew: cardinal and ordinal. **Cardinal** numbers express amount (one, two, three, and so on). **Ordinal** numbers express order in a series (first, second, third, and so on).

#### Cardinal Numbers

	Masculine		Feminine	
	Absolute	Construct	Absolute	Construct
one	אֶחָד	אֶחָד	אֶחָת	אֶחָת
two	שְׁנַיִם	שְׁנֵי	שְׁתֵּי	שְׁתֵּי
three	שְׁלֹשׁ	שְׁלֹשׁ	שְׁלֹשָׁה	שְׁלֹשֶׁת
four	אַרְבַּע	אַרְבַּע	אַרְבַּעַה	אַרְבַּעַת
five	חֲמִישׁ	חֲמִישׁ	חֲמִישָׁה	חֲמִישֶׁת
six	שֵׁשׁ	שֵׁשׁ	שֵׁשָׁה	שֵׁשֶׁת
seven	שִׁבְעַ	שִׁבְעַ	שִׁבְעָה	שִׁבְעַת
eight	שְׁמוֹנָה	שְׁמוֹנָה	שְׁמוֹנָה	שְׁמוֹנֶת
nine	תֵּשַׁע	תֵּשַׁע	תֵּשַׁעָה	תֵּשַׁעַת
ten	עָשָׂר	עָשָׂר	עָשָׂרָה	עָשָׂרַת
teen	עָשָׂר		עָשָׂרָה	

The cardinal numbers **one** and **two** agree in gender with the nouns they modify. When used like an adjective, one usually comes after the noun, but two can come either before or after the



noun. Both can also be used like nouns, in which case they are often in construct, with a following noun in the absolute position.

אֶל-מָקוֹם אֶחָד	to one place (Gen 1:9)
שְׁתֵּי נָשִׁים	two wives (Gen 4:19)

The cardinal numbers **three** through **ten** take a form that is opposite in gender to the noun they modify. They often do not agree in definiteness. They may be in construct before the noun, or in the absolute form either before or after the noun.

שְׁלֹשָׁה בָּנִים	three sons (Gen 6:10)
שִׁבְעַת יָמִים	seven days (Gen 8:10)

The **teens**, eleven through nineteen, have the numeral ten with a unit either before or after. Ten agrees in gender, while the units follow their own rules of agreement (one, two) or opposition (three to ten). The combination usually comes before the noun.

שְׁנָה שְׁתַּיִם עָשָׂרָה	twelve years (Gen 14:4)
חֲמִשָּׁה עָשָׂרָה שְׁנָה	fifteen years (2 Kgs 14:17)

The addition of a masculine plural ending to ten forms the number **twenty**. The **other tens** (30, 40, and so on) add masculine plural endings to the masculine numbers from three to nine.

הָעֶשְׂרִים	the twenty (Gen 18:31)
וּשְׁלֹשִׁים אַמָּה	and thirty cubits (Gen 6:15)

The combination of tens and other numbers may come before or after the noun. The tens are always masculine plural and the units follow their own rules of agreement or opposition.

עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שְׁנָה	twenty-two years (Judg 10:3)
------------------------------	------------------------------

**Ordinal Numbers**

	Masculine	Feminine
First	רִאשׁוֹן	רִאשׁוֹנָה
Second	שֵׁנִי	שֵׁנִית
Third	שְׁלִישִׁי	שְׁלִישִׁיָּה
Fourth	רְבִיעִי	רְבִיעִית
Fifth	חֲמִישִׁי	חֲמִישִׁית
Sixth	שֵׁשִׁי	שֵׁשִׁית
Seventh	שְׁבִיעִי	שְׁבִיעִית
Eighth	שְׁמִינִי	שְׁמִינִית
Ninth	תְּשִׁיעִי	תְּשִׁיעִית
Tenth	עֲשִׂירִי	עֲשִׂירִיָּה

**Vocabulary**

The following list includes numbers from one to ten and numbers that occur more than one hundred times.

אֶחָד	one (m)
אַחַת	one (f)
רִאשׁוֹן	first (ordinal number)
שְׁנַיִם	two (m)
שְׁתַּיִם	two (f)
שֵׁנִי	second (ordinal number)
שְׁלוֹשׁ שְׁלֹשׁ	three (m)
שְׁלוֹשָׁה	three (f)
שְׁלֹשִׁים	thirty
שְׁלִישִׁי	third (ordinal number)
אַרְבֶּעַ	four (m)
אַרְבָּעָה	four (f)
אַרְבָּעִים	forty

חֲמִשָּׁה	five (m)
חֲמִשָּׁה	five (f)
חֲמִשִּׁים	fifty
שֵׁשׁ	six (m)
שֵׁשָׁה	six (f)
שִׁבְעַ	seven (m)
שִׁבְעָה	seven (f)
שְׁמוֹנֶה	eight (m)
שְׁמוֹנָה	eight (f)
תֵּשַׁע	nine (m)
תֵּשַׁעָה	nine (f)
עָשָׂר	ten (m) (עָשָׂר in numbers 11–19)
עָשָׂרָה	ten (f) (עָשָׂרָה in numbers 11–19)
עֶשְׂרִים	twenty
מֵאוֹה	hundred
זָהָב	gold
חַי	alive, living (adj)
חַיִּים	life, lifetime (noun)
יָם	sea
יִרָא	fear, be afraid
יָרַד	go down

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following and chart the verbs.

שִׁמְעוּ<sup>1</sup> יִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ יְהוָה אֶחָד: (Deut 6:4)

---

<sup>1</sup> “Hear!” or “Listen!” (a Qal imperative). You will study the Qal imperative in Chapter 22.

וַיֹּאמֶר לוֹ הַתְּבוֹא לָךְ<sup>a</sup> שִׁבְעַ<sup>b</sup> שָׁנִים | (2 Sam 24:13)

רַעֲבָ<sup>2</sup> | בְּאַרְצְךָ

(<sup>a</sup> > pc Mss || <sup>b</sup> ὅ τριὰ “three” ex 1 Chron 21,12)

וַיְהִי־שָׁם<sup>a</sup> עִם־יְהוָה אַרְבָּעִים יוֹם<sup>b</sup> (Exod 34:28)

(<sup>a</sup> ὅ + Μωυσῆς “Moses” || <sup>b</sup> ἡμέρας “days”)

וַיִּבְּאוּ אֵילָמָה<sup>3</sup> וְשָׁם<sup>a</sup> שְׁתֵּים עָשָׂר עֵינַת מַיִם (Exod 15:27)

(<sup>a</sup> ἡμέρας<sup>314</sup> Philo τ<sup>j</sup> “days”)

כָּל־הַלְוִיִּם בְּעִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵאַתִּים<sup>4</sup> (Neh 11:18)

שְׁמֹנִים וָאַרְבָּעָה:

וַיְהִי מִסְפָּר<sup>5</sup> הַיָּמִים אֲשֶׁר הָיָה דוֹד מֶלֶךְ (2 Sam 2:11)

בְּחֶבְרוֹן עַל־בֵּית יְהוּדָה שִׁבְעַ שָׁנִים וְשֵׁשׁ חֳדָשִׁים<sup>6</sup>:

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to use a lexicon to translate some of the words. Chart the verbs.

בְּשָׁנַת שְׁתֵּים לְדַרְיוֹשׁ הַמֶּלֶךְ בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁשִׁי בְּיוֹם אֶחָד (Hag 1:1)

לְחֹדֶשׁ הָיָה דְּבַר־יְהוָה בְּיַד־חֲנַי הַנָּבִיא אֶל־זְרַבְבָּל בֶּן־שַׁאֲלֻמְיָאֵל

פָּתַח יְהוּדָה וְאֶל־יְהוֹשֻׁעַ בֶּן־יְהוֹצָדָק הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל

וְלֹא־שָׁב<sup>a</sup> מִרְשָׁעוֹ<sup>7</sup> וְהָמַדְרִכּוּ הָרָשָׁעָה (Ezek 3:19)

(<sup>a</sup> add cf 33,9)

<sup>2</sup> “famine”

<sup>3</sup> אֵילָם is a place name (full spelling: אֵילִים). In Chapter 21 you will learn the meaning of the הָיָה on the end. Its sense here is “to אֵילָם.”

<sup>4</sup> This is the dual form of מֵאָה: “two hundred.”

<sup>5</sup> “the number of”

<sup>6</sup> “months”

<sup>7</sup> “from his wickedness”

וַיִּקַּח עֲבָדֵיהוּ מֵאָה נְבָאִים (1 Kgs 18:4)

זֶה-לִּי עֲשָׂרִים שָׁנָה בְּבֵיתְךָ עֲבָדְתִּיךָ אַרְבַּע-עָשָׂרָה  
שָׁנָה בְּשֵׂתִי בְנֵתְךָ וְשָׁשׁ שָׁנִים בְּצֶאֱנָךְ (Gen 31:41)

## Chapter 15

### Verb Stems

The Qal is the simplest of several verb stems. Hebrew adds consonants and vowels to the three-letter root of the verb in order to express different meanings. Traditionally, the root **פעל** is used to name the stems other than Qal. The 3 ms perfect form of the stem with this root is essentially the name of the stem. The following table lists the name in Hebrew and English. The **indicators** of the stem for the perfect and imperfect are placed on the root **שמר**.

When you are reading Hebrew, if you still cannot make sense of a form, remember that lexicons list and identify the forms of a verb. (Because **פעל** is a II-guttural you may notice some differences between the stem and indicators columns in the table of indicators below.)

Stem	Name	Indicators	Comments
	Qal	שָׁמַר יִשְׁמַר	Lack of additions identifies Qal. Qamets under first letter identifies the perfect. Prefixes indicate the imperfect.
נִפְעַל	Niphal	נִשְׁמַר יִשְׁמַר	Nun indicates Niphal perfect. Dagesh in first letter and qamets under it indicate Niphal imperfect.
פִּעֵל	Piel	שִׁמַּר יִשְׁמַר	Doubling of middle letter indicates a Piel. A hireq under first letter indicates the perfect. Sheva under the prefix indicates the imperfect.

פָּעַל	Pual	שָׁמַר יִשְׁמַר	Qibbuts or another u-class vowel under first letter and doubling of middle letter indicate Pual.
הִפְעִיל	Hiphil	הִשְׁמִיר יִשְׁמֹר	“Dot vowel” under middle letter indicates Hiphil. <sup>1</sup> Prefixed he <sup>3</sup> indicates the perfect. Pataḥ under prefix indicates the imperfect.
הִפְעִלְ	Hophal	הִשְׁמַר יִשְׁמַרְ	U-class vowel under prefixes indicates Hophal. Prefixed he <sup>3</sup> indicates the perfect. U-class vowel is under prefix of the imperfect.
הִתְפַּעֵל	Hitpael	הִתְשַׁמַּר יִתְשַׁמַּר	Inserted tav and doubling of middle letter indicates stem. Prefixed he <sup>3</sup> indicates the perfect. Prefix, as usual, indicates the imperfect

### Meaning of the Stems<sup>2</sup>

Central to understanding the different meanings of the Hebrew stems are the differences between the top three stems in the examples in the table on the next page: Qal, Piel, and Hiphil.

1. The **Qal** is the *simple action* expressed by the verbal root, “walk” in the example.

2. The **Piel** *brings about the state* expressed by the verbal root, “walking” in the example. An *object* of the verb tends to be a “passive” *secondary subject*. The state tends to be *habitual* or *ongoing*.

3. The **Hiphil** actively *causes the event* expressed by the verbal root. The *object* of the verb is caused to take part in the action, to be “active” as a *secondary subject*, and the event tends to be *occasional* or *one-time*.

4. The **other stems** are the *passive* or *reflexive* (or sometimes *middle*) counterparts of these three stems, as the table indicates.

<sup>1</sup> “Dot vowels:” hireq, tsere, or segol.

<sup>2</sup> The description and table is adapted from Waltke and O’Connor, *IBHS*, p. 358 § 21.2.2n.

Normally a verb would occur only in the stems appropriate to its meaning. The use of “walk” as an example for all the stems below is for the sake of illustration and thus is somewhat forced and unnatural.

		<i>Voice of Secondary Subject</i>		
		None	Passive	Active
<b><i>Voice of Subject</i></b>	Active	<u>Qal</u> She walked	<u>Piel</u> She was walking the people	<u>Hiphil</u> She caused the people to walk
	Passive	<u>Niphal</u> She was walked	<u>Pual</u> She was being walked by the people	<u>Hophal</u> She was caused by the people to walk
	Reflexive	<u>Niphal</u> She walked herself	<u>Hitpael</u> She made herself walk	<u>Hiphil</u> She caused herself to walk

These differences are difficult to conceive and express in English. As a result, lexicons, grammars, and translations have tended to miss these nuances.

### Vocabulary

<sup>3</sup>בָּקַשׁ\* (Pi) seek (בִּקֵּשׁ)

דִּבֶּר\* (Pi) speak (דִּבֵּר)

<sup>3</sup> The asterisk indicates a hypothetical form. A Qal form of the root is listed, as is customary, but this form never appears in the Hebrew Bible. Some people choose to memorize the forms of these roots in the stems in which they occur rather than in the hypothetical Qal form.



יָשַׁע*	(Ni) be saved; (Hi) save
כִּוֵּן*	(Ni) be firm, established; (Hi) prepare
כֵּלִי	vessel, utensil
כֶּסֶף	silver
מִלְחָמָה	war, battle
מָלַךְ	reign, be king
מָקוֹם	place
נֹאם	utterance, declaration
נִגַּד*	(Hi) make known, report, tell
נָכַח*	(Ni) be hit; (Hi) smite; kill
נִצַּל*	(Ni) be delivered; (Hi) snatch away
סוּר	turn aside; (Hi) take away, remove
צִוָּה*	(Pi) command (צִוָּה)

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Identify the new verb stems in each of the following using the chart of **indicators**. Be prepared to discuss how the new stems express the activity or passivity of primary and secondary subjects (objects), and whether a one-time event or ongoing state is in view. Keep in mind the rules for missing and weak letters that you learned in Chapter 6.

וַיִּרְא<sup>4</sup> כִּי אֵין אִישׁ  
וַיִּדְ<sup>5</sup> אֶת־הַמִּצְרִי

---

<sup>4</sup> Note: III-he<sup>3</sup> Qal and Hiphil verbs sometimes have the same form when the he<sup>3</sup> is missing. The context then determines the verb stem.

<sup>5</sup> From a word in the vocabulary. Only the middle root letter appears here.

(Gen 28:1) וַיִּקְרָא יִצְחָק אֶל-יַעֲקֹב וַיְבָרֶךְ אֹתוֹ וַיְצַוְהוּ וַיֹּאמֶר  
לֹא לֹא-תִקַּח אִשָּׁה מִבְּנוֹת כְּנָעַן:

(1 Sam 30:31) וְלֹא-אִשָּׁר בְּחֶבְרוֹן וְלִכְלֹל-הַמִּקְמוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר-הִתְהַלַּךְ-שָׁם דָּוִד הוּא וְאֲנָשָׁיו:

(Exod 20:2) אֲנֹכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ<sup>6</sup> מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם  
מִבֵּית עַבְדִּים:

(Jer 45:5) וְאַתָּה תִּבְקֹשׁ-לִי גְדִלוֹת אֶל-תִּבְקֹשׁ

2. Read aloud and translate the following. You will need to use a lexicon to translate some of the words. Chart the verbs.

(Isa 43:12) אֲנֹכִי הַגִּדְתִּי וְהוֹשַׁעְתִּי<sup>7</sup>  
וְהִשְׁמַעְתִּי וְאִין בְּכֶם זֶר<sup>8</sup> וְאַתֶּם  
עֲדִי<sup>9</sup> נֹאם-יְהוָה<sup>a</sup> וְאֲנִי-אֵל:  
(<sup>a</sup> fīr huc tr :)

<sup>6</sup> Listed in lexicons under יָצָא rather than יִצֵּא. This will be explained in subsequent chapters on Hiphil imperfect and perfect verbs.

<sup>7</sup> Listed in lexicons under יָשַׁע rather than וָשַׁע. See the previous footnote.

<sup>8</sup> “strange (god)”

<sup>9</sup> “my witnesses”

(Gen 28:15) וְהִנֵּה אֲנֹכִי עֹמֵד וְשֹׁמְרֵי־יָדְךָ בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר־תֵּלֵךְ  
וְהִשְׁבֵּתִיךָ אֶל־הָאֲדָמָה הַזֹּאת כִּי לֹא אֶעֱזָבְךָ עַד אֲשֶׁר  
אִם־עָשִׂיתִי אֵת אֲשֶׁר־דִּבַּרְתִּי לָךְ:

(Deut 8:10) וְאִכַּלְתָּ וְשִׁבַּעְתָּ וּבִרְכַּתְתָּ אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ  
עַל־הָאָרֶץ הַטֹּבָה אֲשֶׁר נָתַן־לָךְ:  
(אל<sup>a</sup> pc Mss)

## Chapter 16

### Translation

Many people are unaware of the considerable difficulties involved in translating the Hebrew Bible. The New Jewish Publication Society Translation (NJPS) acknowledges these difficulties with such notes as: “Meaning of Hebrew uncertain.” These notes may refer to a word, several words, a chapter, such as Psalm 68, or many parts of the book of Job.

Some of these difficulties are treated in other chapters of this book. Chapter 12, Textual Criticism, discusses which Hebrew text to translate, and how to identify and correct errors that have crept in through centuries of copying and recopying. The meaning of individual words, especially if they only occur once or twice in the Hebrew Bible, is one of the topics in Chapter 4, Word Studies. The meaning of grammar and the process of understanding the ancient writings of a different culture appear in other chapters (and many other books on exegesis). After determining the text and meaning in Hebrew, there are many issues involved in how to translate that meaning into another language.

The present chapter discusses different **theories of translation**, supported by examples from the resulting modern translations. The two poles on the spectrum are **literal** translation (also called text-oriented translation or formal correspondence) and **idiomatic** translation (dynamic equivalence or audience-oriented translation).

#### Literal Translation

Many biblical students think the best translation is the most literal one. Each term in Hebrew should be translated word-by-word with corresponding terms in the translation language. This is called **text-oriented** because the meaning is in the text and it is

important to reproduce that text as faithfully as possible in another language. This is also called **formal correspondence** because the form in Hebrew (A B C) corresponds to the form in the translation language (A B C).

This type of biblical translation has a long history in the West. Jerome is well known for recognizing that translation should be “not word-for-word, but sense-for-sense,” but less well-known for qualifying this by saying, “except for Holy Scripture where even the word order is sacred.” The Septuagint, Jerome’s Vulgate, and modern English translations, such as the King James Version (KJV), the American Standard Version (ASB), the Revised Standard Version (RSV), and the New Jewish Publication Society (NJPS) translation are literal translations. The NJPS even holds that there should be a one-to-one correspondence between Hebrew and English words; one Hebrew word should be translated with one English word as often as possible. This tradition of translation, especially the KJV, influenced the work of many of the first missionary translators in the two-thirds (non-Western) world.

Literal translation, however, may create peculiar, awkward, or even misleading translations. English and Hebrew words have different ranges of meaning. Thus, the Hebrew word בְּרִית can be between God and a person (NJPS translates “covenant” in Genesis 15:18), between two persons (NJPS translates “pact” in Genesis 21:27), and between two rulers (NJPS translates “treaty” in 1 Kings 5:26 ET 5:12). Word order is different in Hebrew than in some other languages, so early on the rabbis decided it was acceptable for the Septuagint to reverse the Hebrew word order and translate “In the beginning God created” so that careless readers would not mistake “in the beginning” for the creator of God. The translation of every vav with “and” also makes these translations sound childish to English readers. Most of these translations recognize the need to be idiomatic sometimes in order to avoid misunderstanding. As the chair of the NRSV translation committee, Bruce Metzger said, they translate “as literally as possible, as idiomatically as necessary.”

## Idiomatic Translation

This leads to the second major type of translation—idiomatic translation. An **idiom** is an expression, such as “kick the bucket,” or a style that is peculiar to one language. Idioms can be meaningless, misleading, or peculiar if translated word for word into another language. Idiomatic translations attempt to understand the meaning of one language's idioms and express the meaning in the idioms that are the special genius of the translation language. Idiomatic translations aim to have the same effect on the recipients of the translation as on the original recipients. According to Eugene Nida, this includes trying to produce the same feelings and actions in the audience.<sup>1</sup> Because of this willingness to change the text to produce the same effect on the audience, this type of translation is called **audience-oriented** and described as **dynamic equivalence**.

Examples of this type of translation are Today's English Version (TEV) and the Common English Version (CEV), produced by the American Bible Society, and the New English Bible (NEB) and its successor the Revised English Bible (REB). Since the TEV focuses on expressing meaning clearly, it influences many current translation projects in the third world.

The medium, however, is the message. The form influences the meaning. We expect something different from poetry than from a narrative. Many passages in the Hebrew Bible were meant to be memorized and sung; therefore, they employ poetic and memorable constructions. As a result, some commend two recent literal translations of Genesis (by Mary Phil Korsak and Everett Fox) for bringing out the culture and literary structure of the stories. Harvey Minkoff jokes that if the trend to accessibility continues, we may end up with translations that sound like George Orwell's parody of Ecclesiastes 9:11 in the language of Government bureaucrats:

Objective consideration of contemporary phenomena compels the conclusion that success or failure in competitive activities exhibits no tendency to be commensurate with innate capacity,

---

<sup>1</sup> Nida and Taylor, 24.

but that a considerable element of the unpredictable must invariably be taken into account.

### **Audience and Purpose**

The **audience** and how they will use the Bible are also important considerations in translation. Consider the **type of language**. Is it the language of the literate or uneducated? The TEV uses “common English,” understood by most speakers of the language. Translations, such as the KJV, RSV, and NEB, though more literate and less understandable, are often said to have greater majesty and beauty.

Part of the wide appeal of the KJV and RSV is that they retain archaic language that is not common, contemporary English and seemingly more suitable for Scripture. The NEB retains the archaic “thou” and “thy” in addressing God, even though Hebrew has no such expression, since the translators felt their audience was not ready for “you” in addressing God.

Related to the type and level of language are the issues of slang and vulgar language. Keep in mind that what is vulgar at one time period, or in one particular culture, may not be in another time or culture. In the KJV of 1 Samuel 25:22, David vows to kill anyone from Nabal’s family “that *pisseth* against the wall” (italics added). Since the writing of the KJV, most modern translations avoid this type of language, now considered vulgar in English. The Hebrew Bible normally uses the root שָׁכַב (lie with) for sexual intercourse. However, four times (Deut 28:28–30; Isa 13:16; Jer 3:1–2; Zech 14:2) the Hebrew Bible uses the root for sexual intercourse, שָׁגַל. Scholars disagree about whether this was vulgar in Hebrew, but it is clear that these passages intended to shock the readers. Most English translations prefer to reduce the shock.

### **Gender**

One aspect of English that is changing is the use of references to **gender**. Many native speakers now recognize that “man” and “he” did not include women. They will therefore choose more inclusive language such as “humanity” and “she and he” or “they.” Israelite culture was also patriarchal and Hebrew

therefore uses similar exclusive language. As English usage becomes more inclusive, however, translating with exclusive language may create meanings that would not have been so strong for the original hearers.

Thus, several recent translations in English make **inclusive language** their goal. The NRSV uses inclusive human language. Exactly what “inclusive language” meant varied over the years the translation committee met, and varied between committees translating different books. The *Inclusive Language Lectionary* uses more extensive inclusive language and imagery for both humanity and God.

## Scripture

Most of the writers of the Bible did not know that what they were writing would become scripture. As the Hebrew Bible is the scripture of church and synagogue, Jews and Christians through the centuries have felt justified in removing vulgar language in translation. The function of the Hebrew Bible as scripture is also one of the reasons for inclusive translations.

Many translations are meant to be read in church or synagogue. The RSV of Psalm 50:9 reads: “I will accept no bull from your house.” Most translations for church reading try to avoid such unintentional misunderstandings, associations, and vulgarisms. Therefore, the NRSV translates: “I will accept no ox from your house.”

## Translators

The translators and how they are organized also affect the translation. Translations by an individual often bear the peculiarities of that one translator. For that reason, and due to the enormous amount of work involved, committees do many contemporary translations. In addition, many translations use individuals or committees as stylists, who identify idioms created by literal translation that do not sound natural or appropriate to native speakers of the language. Some translations done by expatriates are unpopular with local people because they sound peculiar. More natural sounding translations will start to appear in



the third world as native speakers receive the education and training to do their own translations.

The theology and social status of the translators may intentionally or unintentionally affect the translation. The slightly archaic and more difficult language of translations, such as the NEB and NRSV, is produced and used by a literate elite. American evangelical scholars produced the NIV. The worst example, *The Living Bible*, is not a translation. It is a compilation from the various English versions by one individual who regularly expanded the Bible with his own fundamentalist theological bias and anti-Semitic statements (Matt 12:45; 16:4; Luke 17:25; John 1:17; Gal 4:3; 5:1).

Whatever one decides about these and many other translation issues, making two translations is a good practice for exegesis. The first is a literal translation that brings out the literary structure of the Hebrew. (Chapter 28, *Hebrew Narrative*, discusses this type of literal translation.) The second is a more idiomatic translation that attempts to communicate the results of the exegesis.

### Exercises

1. The NIV translates Psalm 103:1 as “Praise the LORD, O my soul.” The NRSV translated it as “Bless the LORD, O my soul.” Why is the translation different?
2. In Psalm 1:1 the word אֲשֶׁרִי is translated “blessed” by the NIV and “happy” by others such as the NRSV, TEV, and NJPS. What do you think would be the best translation and why?
3. The description of God as אֵלֵּי אֲרֶךְ is common in the Hebrew Bible.<sup>2</sup> What does this idiom say literally? What does it mean?

---

<sup>2</sup> Exod 34:6; Num 14:18; Neh 9:17; Ps 86:15; 103:8; 145:8; Prov 14:29; 16:32; Joel 2:13; Jonah 4:2; Nah 1:3.

## Chapter 17

### Hiphil Imperfect

The second most common stem in Hebrew is the Hiphil. A “dot vowel”—hireq ( . ), tseré ( .. ) or segol ( .̣ )—under the middle root letter is a consistent **indicator** of the Hiphil stem. (Verbs in stems other than Hiphil, however, may have a dot vowel under the middle root letter.)

#### Form of the Hiphil Imperfect

The **indicator** of the Hiphil imperfect is a pataḥ ( \_ ) under the imperfect prefix.

יִשְׁמַר

With a vav consecutive, the form is shortened.

וַיִּשְׁמַר

or

וַיִּשְׁמֹר

With **III-gutturals** (ע ח ה), because they prefer a-class vowels before them, a pataḥ may replace the dot vowel.

וַיִּשְׁלַח

**III-heʿ**. The heʿ may be present, absent, or replaced by a tav or yod. When the final heʿ disappears, then the dot vowel may be under the first root letter or absent altogether.

וַיִּגְלַל

וַיִּגְלוּ

Note that in the first example the expected pataḥ under the yod has changed to a segol under the influence of the segol under the gimel. The Qal imperfect of this root has a ḥireq under the yod.

Some forms could be either Qal or Hiphil. For example,

עלה from יַעַל

The final he<sup>3</sup> is lost in both Qal and Hiphil. In the above example, the pataḥ may be a sign of the Hiphil. On the other hand, because gutturals prefer a-class vowels underneath and before them, it could be a Qal. The reader must use the meaning in context to determine the stem.

**I-nun** assimilates.

נגד from יְגִיד

**I-vav**. Although now usually listed in lexicons as I-yod, original I-vav remains in the Hiphil.

ישב from יוֹשִׁיב

הלך behaves like a I-vav.

יִהְיֶה

**II-vav or yod** are the same in the Hiphil. A qamets under the prefix is an indicator of a II-vav or yod root (as in Qal), and the first root letter, rather than the second, has a dot vowel.

קום from יָקִים

### Meaning of the Hiphil

The differences of meaning between Qal, Piel, and Hiphil are important to understanding the Hebrew stems. Older grammars called the Piel intensive and the Hiphil causative. But this did not bring out the difference between the two stems because many Piel also seemed causative. (Moreover, both Piel and Hiphil had similar factitive and denominative uses.) According to Ernst Jenni, the

difference is that, whereas Piel indicates bringing about a state, Hiphil indicates *causing an event*. In other words, Piel tends to be action that is habitual or ongoing; Hiphil tends to be *action that occurs only once or a few times*. Piel tends to have a passive object; Hiphil tends to have an object that takes part as a second subject in the action.

Verbs that are intransitive in Qal tend to be transitive in Hiphil. Transitive verbs take an object or objects. Intransitive verbs do not take an object. When a verb is transitive in Qal, it tends to take two objects in the Hiphil.

### Vocabulary

אֹיֵב	enemy
אֶף	nose, nostril; anger
בְּרִית	covenant
בָּשָׁר	flesh
חֹדֶשׁ	new moon, month
חֹזֶק	be(come) strong; (Hi) seize, grasp
חַטָּאת	sin, sin-offering
חָיָה	live, be (stay) alive
כָּרַת	cut off, fell, exterminate; make (a covenant)
נָבִיא	prophet
עֲנָה	answer
עֵץ	tree(s) (often collective)
רוּחַ	spirit, wind
שָׂדֶה שְׂדֵי	field
שַׁעַר	gate

### Exercises

1. Read aloud, translate, and chart the verbs in the following verses. Discuss the meaning of the Hiphil verbs. By now you

should be able to use a lexicon or be ready to learn to use one. For that reason, exercises will no longer be separated. You will need to use a lexicon to look up some words in many exercises.

(Gen 3:21) וַיַּעַשׂ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאָדָם<sup>a</sup> וּלְאִשְׁתּוֹ כְּתָנוֹת  
עוֹר וַיַּלְבִּשֵׁם: <sup>1</sup>(<sup>a</sup> cf 17<sup>a</sup>)

(Exod 3:6) וַיֹּאמֶר אֲנֹכִי אֱלֹהֵי אֲבִיךָ<sup>a</sup> אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם  
אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב וַיִּסְתֵּר מֹשֶׁה פָּנָיו כִּי יָרָא  
|| אֲבִתָּיךָ<sup>58.72</sup> et Act 7,32 Just (אֵלֶּיךָ<sup>a</sup>)  
<sup>b</sup> pc Mss אֵלֶּיךָ<sup>a</sup> cf 15<sup>a</sup>.16<sup>b</sup> 4,5<sup>b</sup>)

(Exod 3:11) וַיֹּאמֶר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִים מִי אֲנֹכִי כִּי אֵלֶּךָ  
אֶל־פְּרַעֲהוֹ וְכִי אוֹצִיא אֶת־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל מִמִּצְרָיִם:

(Deut 6:2) יִזְכָּרְךָ יְמִיד:

(Ruth 3:16) וַתָּבוֹא אֶל־חֲמוּתָהּ וַתֹּאמֶר מִי־אַתָּה בְּתִי  
וַתַּגְדֵּלָהּ אֶת כָּל־אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה־לָּהּ הָאִישׁ

(Gen 2:15) וַיִּקַּח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם וַיִּנְחָלֵהוּ  
בְּגֶן־עֵדֶן

(Gen 2:19) <sup>2</sup>וַיִּצֹר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים<sup>a</sup> מִן־הָאֲדָמָה<sup>b</sup> כָּל־חַיַּת  
הַשָּׂדֶה וְאֵת כָּל־עוֹף הַשָּׁמַיִם וַיָּבֵא אֶל־הָאָדָם  
(|| עוֹר + אֵלֶּיךָ<sup>a</sup> ins c || <sup>b</sup>)

(Gen 2:21) וַיִּפֹּל יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים | תְּרֵמָה עַל־הָאָדָם

<sup>1</sup> Footnote 17<sup>a</sup> (on וַיַּלְבִּשׁ in Gen 3:17) reads: וַיִּלְ' .

<sup>2</sup> You may have difficulty charting this verb unless you recognize that the vowel under the yod is written defectively.

(Gen 2:22) וַיִּבֶן יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הַצֵּלַע אֲשֶׁר־לָקַח מִן־הָאָדָם  
לְאִשָּׁה וַיָּבֵאתָ אֶל־הָאָדָם:

(Isa 42:6) אֲנִי יְהוָה קְרֹאתִיךָ בְּצִדְקָה וְאַחֲזִיק<sup>a</sup> בְּיָדְךָ  
(<sup>a</sup> 1' cf 5ט)

(Gen 2:9) וַיַּצְמַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מִן־הָאֲדָמָה קָל־עֵץ נְחֹמֵד<sup>3</sup>  
לְמִרְאָה וְטוֹב לְמֵאכֹל וְעֵץ הַחַיִּים בְּתוֹךְ הָעֵץ וְעֵץ הַדַּעַת  
טוֹב וְרָע:

---

<sup>3</sup> “desirable”

## Chapter 18

### Piel Imperfect

The third most frequent stem in Hebrew is the Piel. The **stem indicator** is the strong dagesh (doubling) in the middle root letter.

דבר

The gutturals (ע פ ח א) and resh (ר) do not double when they are the middle root letter. Occasionally, doubling is lost when a suffixed pronoun is added, or in the imperfect of III-he<sup>3</sup> roots with vav consecutive.

II-guttural or II-resh:	וַיְבָרֶךְ	he blessed
Sheva under middle root letter:	בִּקְשָׁה <sup>1</sup>	she sought
Suffixed pronoun:	וַתְּהַלֵּלָהּ	that she may praise you
III-he <sup>3</sup> with vav consecutive:	וַיִּצַו	he commanded

When the doubling is missing as in the examples above, the indicators of the Piel imperfect and Piel perfect are all the more important to recognize the stem. The indicators for the Piel imperfect are in the next subsection and the indicators for the Piel perfect are in Chapter 21.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is a Piel *perfect*, which will be discussed in Chapter 21.

## Form of the Piel Imperfect

The Piel imperfect also has the same prefixes and suffixes as the Qal imperfect. The **indicator** of the Piel imperfect is a sheva under the imperfect prefix.

יִדְבֹּר      תִּדְבֹּר      אִדְבֹּר      נִדְבֹּר

Notice that the 1cs prefix is a guttural, which prefers composite shevas.

Verbs in stems other than Piel may have a sheva under the prefix of the imperfect. For example, III-he<sup>3</sup> Qal verbs with vav consecutive may have a sheva under the prefix.

וַיְהִי־אֹר      And there was light (Gen 3:1)

The simple meaning in this context and the fact that וַיְהִי does not appear in the Piel identify this as a Qal.

Verbs with suffixed pronouns may also have a sheva under the prefix of the Qal imperfect.

וַיַּבְאֶהָ      he brought her (Gen 2:22)

In this case, however, the dot vowel under the bet and the meaning in context identify the stem as Hiphil.

## Meaning of the Piel

Older grammars called the Piel intensive. The designation intensive was appealing because the doubling of the middle root letter seemed intensive, so form and meaning seemed to correspond. But few if any verbs could be shown to have a more intensive meaning in the Piel than in the Qal. Ernst Jenni proposed a better way to understand the Piel: Piel indicates *bringing about a state*. Hebrew uses the Piel when the subject is putting the object into the state or condition corresponding to the meaning of the verb root. The object thus takes part in the action as a passive,



secondary subject. Being a state, *the action tends to be habitual or ongoing*.

This general meaning can be further divided into factitive, denominative, and frequentative. (The Piel forms below are those of the Piel perfect, discussed in Chapter 21).

**Factitive.** According to Webster’s Dictionary a factitive verb is one that expresses the idea of making, calling, or thinking something to be of a certain character.

Qal		Piel	
צָדַק	be just, righteous	צִדֵּק	declare just

**Denominative** verbs are formed from nouns. Generally, it is thought that they are formed from nouns because the noun forms appear earlier and more frequently than the verb forms.

Noun		Piel	
דָּבָר	word	דִּבֵּר	speak (make or declare a word)

A subgroup of denominative verbs is **privative**, which indicate taking something away from or injuring the noun.

Noun		Piel	
חַטָּאת	sin	חִטֵּאת	free from sin

**Frequentative.** These are also called iterative or pluralic, indicating multiple or repeated action.

Qal		Piel	
הלך	walk	הלִּלֵךְ	walk around

The reason why some verbs use Piel is unclear because either they do not occur in Qal, or when they do occur in both Qal and Piel, there is no apparent difference in meaning.

## Vocabulary

אֶבֶן	stone (f)
אֲדָמָה	ground
לֶחֶם	bread
מָאֵד	force, might (noun); very, exceedingly (adv)
מִדְבָּר	pasturage, wilderness, steppe
מִשְׁפָּחָה	family; clan
סָבִיב	circuit (noun); all around, round about, surrounding (adv)
עָבַד	serve
עֹלָה	burnt offering
עֵת	time
פְּלִשְׁתִּי	Philistine (פְּלִשְׁתָּ "Philistia")
פָּקַד	visit; number; appoint; miss; take care of; muster
צֹאן	flock
קָרַב	draw near
שְׁלֹמֹה	Solomon

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs. Discuss the meaning of the Piel verbs.

וַיְבָרֶךְ אֹתָם אֱלֹהִים (Gen 1:28)

וַיֵּצֵא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים עַל-הָאָדָם ...  
מִכָּל עֵץ-הָגֶן ... תֹאכַל:

וַיְבָרֶךְ אֱלֹהִים אֶת-יוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי וַיְקַדְּשׁ אֹתוֹ (Gen 2:3)

(Num 6:24) יְבָרְכֶךָ יְהוָה וְיִשְׁמְרֶךָ:

(Exod 3:20) וְשַׁלַּחְתִּי אֶת־יָדִי וְהִכִּיתִי אֶת־מִצְרַיִם בְּכָל־  
נִפְלְאוֹתַי<sup>2</sup> אֲשֶׁר אֶעֱשֶׂה בְּקִרְבּוֹ וְאַחֲרֵי־כֵן יִשְׁלַח אֶתְכֶם:

(1 Kgs 1:2) וַיֹּאמְרוּ לֹא<sup>a</sup> עֲבָדָיו וּבְקִשּׁוֹ לֹאֲדֹנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
נִעְרָה בְּתוֹלָה וְעִמְדָה לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְתִהְיֶה־לּוֹ  
סִכְנָת<sup>3</sup> וְשִׁכְבָּה בְּחִיקָךְ<sup>c</sup>

(<sup>a</sup> > ֫ \* || <sup>b</sup> ֫ B suff 1 pl || <sup>c</sup> ֫ \* μετ' αὐτοῦ "with him," <sup>v</sup> Mss in sinu suo)

(Exod 2:17) וַיָּבֹאוּ הָרָעִים וַיִּגְרְשׁוּם וַיִּקַּם מֹשֶׁה וַיּוֹשַׁעַן  
וַיִּשָּׁק אֶת־צִאֲנָם:

(Deut 5:11) לֹא תִשָּׂא אֶת־שֵׁם־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לְשׁוּא כִּי לֹא יִנָּקֶה  
יְהוָה אֶת־<sup>a</sup> אֲשֶׁר־יִשָּׂא אֶת־שְׁמוֹ לְשׁוּא<sup>b</sup>:  
(<sup>a</sup> ֫ \* + ֫ [ו]ל, 1 m ut Ex 20,7 || <sup>b-b</sup> > ֫ )

(Deut 5:24) וַתֹּאמְרוּ<sup>a</sup> הֵן הָרָאנוּ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ אֶת־כְּבוֹדוֹ  
<sup>b</sup> וְאֶת־גְּדֻלּוֹ וְאֶת־קְלוֹ שָׁמַעְנוּ מִתּוֹךְ הָאֵשׁ הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה רָאִינוּ  
כִּי־יִדְבֹר אֱלֹהִים<sup>c</sup> אֶת־הָאָדָם וְחַי:  
(<sup>a</sup> ֫ \* cf 5 יהוה || <sup>b-b</sup> > ֫ <sup>LO</sup> || <sup>c</sup> ֫ \* ואתם ת' ֫ )

2. Begin a word study by reading the entry in your lexicon for בָּרַךְ and noting the possible meanings. Prepare for a discussion of the meaning of the word.

<sup>2</sup> "my wonders"

<sup>3</sup> "one serving"

## Chapter 19

### Hiphil Perfect

#### Form of the Hiphil Perfect

The **indicator** of the Hiphil **stem**, as mentioned in Chapter 17, is a dot vowel—hireq (ֶ), tsere (ֵ) or segol (ִ)—under the middle root letter. The **indicator** of the Hiphil **perfect** is a prefixed he<sup>3</sup> (ה־). The vowel pointing is usually הֶ־ and sometimes הֵ־, הִ־ or הֶ־.<sup>1</sup> This he<sup>3</sup> may derive from the he<sup>3</sup> of the pronouns (הֵּן הֵּן) and represent the “second subject” mentioned in Chapter 17.

הִגְדִּיל

The dot vowel occurs only in third-person forms in the perfect. It is still a helpful indicator because third-person forms are the most commonly occurring.

**I-nun.** When the first root letter is a nun (נ), it assimilates into the second root letter.

הִגִּיד > הִנְגִּיד\*

**I-vav.** Although listed as I-yod in lexicons, the original vav remains in the Hiphil perfect.

יֵשֵׁב from הוֹשִׁיב

---

<sup>1</sup> This he<sup>3</sup> could be easily confused with the interrogative he<sup>3</sup> or the definite article, especially since the pointing of the last example is the same as that of the interrogative he<sup>3</sup>.

The verb הִלֵּךְ acts like a I-vav in the Hiphil.

הוֹלִיךְ

A few I-vav verbs, usually with ז as the middle root letter, show assimilation of yod into the second root letter like a I-nun verb.

יִצַּח from יָצָה

**II-vav or yod.** Both II-vav and II-yod have the same form in the Hiphil perfect, with a hireq yod between the first and third root letters.

הִקְיָה from קָם  
הִשְׁיָה from שָׁם

The forms may have a hireq or tsere without the yod. For unknown reasons a ḥolem or ḥolem-vav sometimes appears before perfect suffixes beginning with a consonant.

הִבִּיֵּאוּ from בָּא

**III-heʔ.** As elsewhere the heʔ may be present, absent, or replaced by a tav or yod.

PGN	גלה
3ms	הִגְלָה
3fs	הִגְלָתָהּ
2ms	הִגְלִיתָ
3cp	הִגְלוּ

I-guttural, III-guttural, III-heʔ, and I-yod all have minor vowel changes in keeping with the character of these letters, but the indicators and all the letters of the roots are still visible.

## Vocabulary

אֱל	God, god
אַמָּה	forearm, cubit
גְּבוּל	boundary, territory
זָכַר	remember
זָרַע	seed, descendant
חָטָא	miss (a mark), sin
חֵיל	strength; wealth; army
חֶסֶד	loyalty, faithfulness
יְהוֹשֻׁעַ	Joshua (short form: יֵשׁוּעַ)
יָרַשׁ	subdue, possess, dispossess; tread
כָּתַב	write
לַיְלָה לַיִל	night
לְמַעַן	for the sake of, on account of (prep); in order that (conj)
מוֹעֵד	appointed place or time; season
מִטָּה	rod, staff; tribe

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs. Discuss the meaning of the Hiphil verbs.

הִגִּיד לְךָ אֲדָם מַה־טוֹב (Mic 6:8)

וַאֲלֵהָ | מַלְכֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הָכּוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל  
וַיִּרְשׁוּ אֶת־אֲרָצָם (Josh 12:1)

אַתֶּם הַמִּתֶּם אֶת־עַם יְהוָה: (Num 17:6 ET 16:41)

(Amos 2:10) וְאֶנֶכִּי הֶעֱלִיתִי אֶתְכֶם מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם וְאוֹלַךְ אֶתְכֶם  
בַּמִּדְבָּר אַרְבָּעִים שָׁנָה

(Gen 3:11) וַיֹּאמֶר מִי הִנִּיד לְךָ כִּי עִירָם אֵתָהּ

(Gen 3:13) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאִשָּׁה מַה-זֹּאת עָשִׂית וַתֹּאמֶר  
הָאִשָּׁה הִנֵּחַשׁ הִשְׂיָאֲנִי וְאָכַל:

(Deut 11:23) וְהוֹרִישׁ יְהוָה אֶת-כָּל-הַגּוֹיִם הָאֵלֶּה מִלְּפָנֶיכֶם<sup>a</sup>  
וִירְשָׁתָם גּוֹיִם גְּדֹלִים וְעֲצָמִים מִכֶּם<sup>b</sup>:  
(מִמֶּךָ מ<sup>b</sup> || יֶךְ מ<sup>a</sup>)

(Isa 36:20) מִי בְּכָל-אֱלֹהֵי הָאָרְצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר-הִצִּילוּ  
אֶת-אֲרָצָם מִיָּדִי כִּי-יִצִּיל יְהוָה אֶת-יְרוּשָׁלַם מִיָּדִי:

(Exod 16:5) וְהָיָה בַיּוֹם הַשְּׁנִי וְהִכִּינוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר-יִבְיֹאוּ וְהָיָה  
מִשְׁנֶה עַל אֲשֶׁר-יִלְקְטוּ יוֹם יוֹם<sup>2</sup>:

(Judg 2:18) וְכִי-הִקִּים יְהוָה לָהֶם שְׁפָטִים<sup>3</sup> וְהָיָה יְהוָה  
עִם-הַשְּׁפָט וְהוֹשִׁיעֵם מִיַּד אִיְבֵיהֶם כָּל יְמֵי הַשּׁוֹפָט

(Ezek 37:6) וְנָתַתִּי עֲלֵיכֶם גְּדִים וְהֶעֱלִיתִי עֲלֵיכֶם בָּשָׂר וְקִרְמָתִי  
עֲלֵיכֶם עוֹר וְנָתַתִּי בְּכֶם רוּחַ<sup>a</sup> וְחַיִּיתֶם וִידַעְתֶּם כִּי-אֲנִי יְהוָה:  
(<sup>a</sup> Ἐ + μου “my,” 1 M)

<sup>2</sup> This is a Hebrew idiom. Look up the meaning in a lexicon.

<sup>3</sup> “judges”

## **Chapter 20**

### **Authors and Editors**

When we read a newspaper article, we make judgments about the perspective and reliability of the writer. Historians make similar judgments about their historical sources (including newspapers) when they write histories. The idea that the Bible could and should be read like any other book revolutionized biblical studies. Biblical scholars began to question the Bible, just as historians and literary critics did: Who wrote this? When did they write it? What was their perspective?

Ancient authors lived in traditional, communal societies where the individual and therefore individual authorship were not as important as in the modern world. The community's oral and written traditions were copied and handed down from generation to generation. Modern historians are interested in identifying these authors and their sources in order to understand more precisely their historical context and perspective.

### **Source Criticism**

The method for identifying and analyzing sources in biblical studies is called source criticism. In a few cases, biblical writers indicate their sources. When the book of 2 Chronicles refers to the “Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah,”<sup>1</sup> it may be referring to the biblical books of Samuel and Kings. In other cases, long lost books are mentioned. The “Book of the Wars of the LORD” is quoted in Numbers 21:14. Joshua 10:13 and 2 Samuel 1:18 refer to the “Book of Jashar” and 1 Kings 11:41 refers to the “Book of the Acts of Solomon.” The books of Kings often state that more information can be found in the “Book of the Annals of the Kings

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Chr 16:11; 25:26; 28:26; 32:32.



of Israel”<sup>2</sup> or the “Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah.”<sup>3</sup> We can only speculate about what was in these books.

Over vast expanses of the Hebrew Bible, the writers do not identify themselves or their sources. However, sources can still be identified by the following evidence:

- Stories told twice in slightly different ways or repetitions within one story (doublets);
- Shifts in vocabulary and style;
- Differences in theology and ideology;
- Evidence of different historical contexts;
- Disruptions in the logical or narrative flow.

In the history of biblical studies, evidence of sources was first discovered in the Pentateuch. Two stories of creation in Genesis 1:1–2:4a and 2:4b–3:24 create a disruption in logical or narrative flow, especially because the order of creation is different in the second account. They also show differences in theology, vocabulary, and style. Note this often cited difference in vocabulary: Genesis 1:1–2:4a refers to אֱלֹהִים “God,” whereas Genesis 2:4b–3:24 refers to יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים “LORD God.” Biblical scholars call the source of the first story P for the Priestly writer. The source of the second story is called J because German scholars first discovered the sources and J is the first letter of the transliteration into German of the proper name of God (יְהוָה).

These sources seem to continue beyond the creation stories, as the same differences in vocabulary, style, and theology appear on the same sides of doublets throughout the Pentateuch. For example, in the story of Noah, אֱלֹהִים “God” commands Noah to take two of every kind of animal into the ark (Gen 6:19–22), whereas יְהוָה “the LORD” tells Noah to take seven pairs of all clean animals and a pair of unclean animals (7:1–3).

---

<sup>2</sup> 1 Kgs 14:19; 15:31; 16:5, 14, 20, 27; 22:39; 2 Kgs 1:18; 10:34; 13:8, 12; 14:15, 28; 15:11, 15, 21, 26, 31.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Kgs 14:29; 15:7, 23; 22:45; 2 Kgs 8:23; 12:19; 14:18; 15:6, 36; 16:19; 20:20; 21:17, 25; 23:28; 24:5.

This source theory is often referred to as **JEDP**, after the names of the sources, or as the **Documentary Hypothesis**. J and P are the most prominent sources in the first four books of the Pentateuch. D is largely identical to the book of Deuteronomy. E is less frequent and sometimes difficult to distinguish. Although aspects of the hypothesis continue to be hotly debated, the existence of the sources is widely accepted by biblical scholars, because no one has presented a more persuasive explanation of the evidence.

A beginning student cannot assess the theory by reading the entire Pentateuch in Hebrew, but will rely partly on the identification, dating, and description of the sources in critical introductions, commentaries, and Bible dictionaries. However, knowledge of Hebrew does allow the student to examine the vocabulary and style of a particular passage. The student can also find out when scholars date the source and think about its ideology and message within its context. For example, the first creation story (Gen 1:1–2:4a) is commonly assigned to the priestly source written in the exilic or post-exilic period. A student studying a passage in Genesis 1 could therefore compare the passage to creation stories from Mesopotamia<sup>4</sup> that Israel would have been exposed to in exile, and consider how the passage reflects and reacts to those stories and the situation of the exile.

In this chapter's exercises, you can compare the reasons given for the Sabbath commandment by P and D. You may want to look at examples of sources that you have already translated. In the previous chapter, Genesis 3:11 and 3:13 were from the J source. Deuteronomy 11:23 was from D. The reading from Exodus 16:5 reflected the priestly (P) writers' interest in Sabbath, rituals, and time. In the examples in subsequent chapters, you can observe their Hebrew vocabulary and style, and reflect on their theology and ideology in historical context.

---

<sup>4</sup> Several Mesopotamian creation stories are translated in James Pritchard, ed., *Ancient Near Eastern Texts Relating to the Old Testament* (3d ed.; Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1969).

## Redaction Criticism

Continuing study of the literature of the Hebrew Bible revealed that not only were there different sources, but these were selected and arranged by editors in order to present a certain perspective or interpretation. In some cases, the editors also inserted passages with their own interpretations of the sources. These editors in biblical studies are often called **redactors** and the method for identifying redactors is called redaction criticism.

Editorial activity is easiest to identify when we have two different accounts of the same material. An example would be the repetition of laws in P and D. Deuteronomy means “second law.” Another example is the history of Israel in Joshua through Kings and the parallel history in Chronicles.

Even if we do not have two accounts of the same material, we still may be able to distinguish the work of one or more editors. Editorial activity, often speeches or prayers, is most evident in the introduction and conclusion, and at the transitional or bridging passages. In these passages, the hand of an editor is evident, when passages are not self-contained stories and therefore cannot be told on their own. Editors orient the reader to the meaning of the longer work using language and idioms that typically appear in these introductory, transitional, and concluding passages.

The theology and style of Deuteronomy influenced the editors of the books from Joshua to 2 Kings that tell Israel’s story from entry into the land to exile. These books are therefore referred to as the **Deuteronomistic History** (DH) and the editor or editors as the **Deuteronomist** (Dtr) or Deuteronomists. Deuteronomistic style and theology helps us identify these editors’ additions. They placed Deuteronomy at the beginning of their history and organized their source materials into four historical periods: the time of Moses, the entry into the land under Joshua, the judges, and the reigns of kings. They inserted their own compositions throughout, especially at transitions between periods of history. Sometimes these are speeches or prayers by prominent figures, for example, speeches by Joshua that introduce (Joshua 1) and conclude (Joshua 23) the entry into the land. Samuel’s speech in 1 Samuel 12 makes a transition between the period of the judges and

the beginning of the monarchy. Nathan's oracle in 2 Samuel 7 introduces the promise to David and the building of the temple. Solomon's prayer in 1 Kings 8 concludes the first period of the monarchy and marks the completion of the temple. In other places, Dtr speaks through the voice of the narrator (Josh 12; Judg 2:11–22; 2 Kgs 17:7–18, 20–23).

Martin Noth, the biblical scholar who first recognized the Deuteronomistic History as a unified work, thought an exilic editor created it to show how the exile was punishment for Israel and Judah's long history of unfaithfulness. Other scholars thought this was too simple and negative a message for such a long work. Gerhard von Rad and Hans Walter Wolff pointed to the promise to David and the pattern of apostasy, punishment, return (שוב), and deliverance. (The reading from Judges 2:18 in the previous chapter is an example of the last part of this Deuteronomistic pattern.) Although the exile was the punishment for a long history of unfaithfulness and injustice, God would be merciful and deliver, if the people returned to God.

Rudolph Smend and Frank Moore Cross detected more than one edition of the Deuteronomistic History. Josiah seemed to fulfill the hope for a king such as David. Then, when he dies in battle, the Deuteronomistic History quickly ends. Cross suggested the first edition was produced around the time of Josiah. Dtr 1 blamed the fall of the northern kingdom of Israel on the many northern kings who "walked in the way of Jeroboam," causing Israel to sin.<sup>5</sup> Dtr 1 wrote to encourage the people to support Josiah's religious reforms based on the book of Deuteronomy and hoped for restoration under this king "like David." When Josiah's sudden death in battle dashed these hopes, the Deuteronomistic History came to an abrupt end. An exilic redactor (Dtr 2) blamed the exile on the sins of Manasseh, which could not be overcome even by Josiah (2 Kgs 21:10–25), and added a brief conclusion. According to Cross, Dtr 2 inserted passages that predict the exile and say restoration is

---

<sup>5</sup> 1 Kgs 15:26, 30, 34; 16:2, 19, 26, 31; 22:52; 2 Kgs 3:3; 10:29; 13:2, 6, 11; 14:24; 15:9, 18, 24, 28.

possible if the people return to God.<sup>6</sup> Cross' theory of two editions, one of them pre-exilic, is more widely accepted in North America than in Europe. Recently several scholars have shifted their attention to uncovering the sources used by Dtr that appear to contain prophetic and anti-monarchical strains.

Although scholars do not always agree about exactly how the Deuteronomistic History was edited and the message of the editors, this discussion can help us appreciate the historical meaning of this great work.

### **Hebrew Style**

After reading many writings of a particular English novelist, poet, or journalist, we come to recognize recurring themes, perspectives, and a typical writing style. The same is true for ancient Hebrew writers and editors. Knowledge of Hebrew gives you the ability to investigate and appreciate the style of different sources, authors, and editors.

In order to discover whether certain Hebrew words or idioms are typical of an author or source, the use of a concordance is essential. The new computerized concordances can help you search quickly for a particular word, form, or phrase from the Bible. If it occurs almost exclusively in the writing of one author or source, it is probably typical of his or her style.

Deuteronomy has one of the most distinctive manners of expression, including the frequent use and mixing of singular and plural second person verbs and pronouns. Deuteronomy wants to address the people as a whole as well as each individual. Also typical is the use of הַיּוֹם “today.” Although this is a common expression throughout the Bible, a concordance search reveals that it is quite frequent in Deuteronomy. Deuteronomy wants to make the observance of the teachings present “today:” “The LORD did not make this covenant with our ancestors, but with us, we who are here today (הַיּוֹם), all of us who are alive” (Deut 5:3).

Deuteronomy 6:4 is important in both the Jewish and Christian traditions, and many consider it to be central to the

---

<sup>6</sup> See, for example, 1 Kgs 8:46-53.

theology of Deuteronomy. Deuteronomy preaches one people, and the worship of one God, in one place. In Chapter 27, you will read a selection from Deuteronomy 6.

## Exercises

1. Read the different reasons given for the Sabbath in the two versions of the Ten Commandments:

(Exod 20:11) כִּי שֵׁשֶׁת־יָמִים עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֶת־הַשָּׁמַיִם  
וְאֶת־הָאָרֶץ אֶת־הַיָּם וְאֶת־כָּל־אֲשֶׁר־בָּם וַיָּנַח בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי  
(ואת וּ <sup>Ms P</sup> <sup>mlt Mss</sup> <sup>55C</sup>)

(Deut 5:15) וְזָכַרְתָּ כִּי־עָבַד הָיִיתָ בְּאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם וַיֹּצִאֲךָ  
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ מִשָּׁם בְּיָד חֲזָקָה וּבְזֶרַע נְטוּיָה עַל־כֵּן צִוְּךָ  
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת־יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת:<sup>a</sup> ס  
(<sup>a</sup> <sup>O</sup> <sup>5</sup> + καὶ ἀγιάζειν αὐτὴν = וְלִקְדָּשׁוּ cf Ex 20, 11)

2. Read the verses from Deuteronomy below, the Deuteronomistic History, and the Chronicler. Note the similarities and differences in vocabulary, style, and theology. (You have already read the second passage, 2 Kings 23:25 in the exercises for Chapter 11.)

(Deut 6:5–6) וְאָהַבְתָּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ בְּכָל־לִבְבְּךָ וּבְכָל־נַפְשְׁךָ  
וּבְכָל־מְאֹדְךָ: וְהָיוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מְצַוְּךָ הַיּוֹם  
עַל־לִבְבְּךָ:

(2 Kgs 23:25) וְכִמְהוּ לֹא־הָיָה לִפְנָיו מֶלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר־שָׁב  
אֶל־יְהוָה בְּכָל־לִבְבּוֹ וּבְכָל־נַפְשׁוֹ וּבְכָל־מְאֹדוֹ  
כְּכָל<sup>a</sup> תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וְאַחֲרָיו לֹא־קָם כְּמֵהוּ:  
(<sup>a</sup> nonn Mss Seb בְּכָל, nonn Mss וּבְכָל)

וַיִּתֵּר דְּבָרֵי יֹאשִׁיָּהוּ וַחֲסָדָיו<sup>a</sup> כְּכָתוּב<sup>7</sup> בְּתוֹרַת  
 יְהוָה: וּדְבָרָיו<sup>a</sup> הָרִאשִׁימִים וְהָאַחֲרִימִים הֵנָּם כְּתוּבִים<sup>8</sup>  
 (26<sup>a</sup> ὁ καὶ ἡ ἐλπίς αὐτοῦ “and his hope”)

---

<sup>7</sup> “as written.” A Qal passive particle. See Chapter 25.

<sup>8</sup> “are written.” See previous footnote.

## Chapter 21

### Piel Perfect

#### Form of the Piel Perfect

The perfect in the Piel is easily identifiable because it has the same suffixes as the Qal perfect. The **indicator** of the Piel **perfect** is the *hireq* under the first root letter.

יָבַר

As mentioned in Chapter 18 (Piel imperfect), the **indicator** of the Piel **stem** is the doubling of the middle root letter.

When the middle root letter is a guttural (א ה ח ע) or resh (ר), these letters cannot take a dagesh (doubling). In some cases, there is “compensation” by lengthening the previous vowel. The **indicator** of the Piel in these roots is a tsere under the first root letter.

יִרַח

You can think of this as a “traveling dagesh” because it moves from the middle root letter under the first root letter to change a *hireq* into a tsere.

#### Locative he<sup>3</sup>

Nouns, names, and adverbs sometimes suffix a *qamets he<sup>3</sup>* (ה־) to indicate direction toward the noun or just emphasize the location. Other books call it a *he<sup>3</sup> locale* or *directive he<sup>3</sup>*. In reading you can tell the difference between this *he<sup>3</sup>* and most other *qamets-he<sup>3</sup>* endings (ה־), especially the feminine singular ending that takes a Masoretic accent. Although the *locative he<sup>3</sup>* comes at the end of a word where you would expect an accent, it does not take an accent.



The addition of the locative he<sup>3</sup> may change slightly the vowels of the word.

אַרְצָה כְּנָעַן      *toward the land of Canaan*  
(Gen 11:31)

וְהָיָה סֵלָם מֵצֵב  
אֶרֶץ      *there was a ladder standing*  
*on the earth* (Gen 28:12)

### Vocabulary

אָהַב	love, like
אִם	mother
אָסַף	gather, take in
אָרוֹן	ark, chest
בֶּגֶד	garment
בֹּקֶר	morning
יָסַף	add
מָלֵא	be full; (Pi) fill, fulfill
מַעֲשֵׂה	work
נַחֲלָה	inheritance
נָעַר	boy, youth
עוֹן	transgression, iniquity (the vav is pronounced as a consonant)
קָרַב	inward part, midst
בְּקָרַב	in the midst (of), among
רָבָה	be(come) numerous, be great; (Hi) multiply, make many
רֶגֶל	foot

## Exercises

1. Read aloud, translate, and chart the verbs in the following passages. Discuss the meaning of the Piel verbs.

וְשִׁנַּנְתָּם לְבִנְיָד וְדִבְרַת בָּם (Deut 6:7)

כִּי שִׁשְׁת־יָמִים עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֶת־הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת־הָאָרֶץ  
אֶת־הַיָּם וְאֶת־כָּל־אֲשֶׁר־בָּם וַיִּנַּח בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי עַל־כֵּן בֵּרַךְ  
יְהוָה אֶת־יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת בִּיקְדָּשָׁהּ<sup>c</sup>:

(<sup>a</sup> mlt Mss טֵט טֵט<sup>Ms</sup> טֵט<sup>P</sup> וְאֵת || <sup>b</sup> Pap Nash טֵט הַשְּׁבִיעִי || <sup>c</sup> Pap Nash –שִׁיו)

וְאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַרְתָּ לַעֲבֹדָה דְּוָד אָבִי<sup>a</sup> אֵת אֲשֶׁר־דִּבַּרְתָּ לִּי<sup>a</sup>  
וַתְּדַבֵּר בְּפִי וּבִידְךָ<sup>b</sup> מִלֵּאתָ כִּיּוֹם הַזֶּה:  
(<sup>a-a</sup> > ט\* || <sup>b</sup> טֵט pl)

2. From now on, you will be assigned passages to read from *BHS*. Use these to practice both your Hebrew and exegetical skills. For example, in order to translate, you will need to read the text-critical notes in *BHS*. You may want to do word studies on certain words, or you might discuss the evidence of sources or editors.

Read aloud and translate Genesis 2:7–9 using the following notes. Chart the verbs, as usual.

### Verse 7

בְּאִפִּי

The first letter is a preposition, and the last a suffixed pronoun. BDB gives you help finding the root. Under I. אָפַךְ (in small print) it says “v. sub אָנַף.” That is the root.

### Verse 9

נִחְמָד

“Pleasant.” This is a Niphal participle. You will study the Niphal and participles in later chapters.

הִדְעַת

BDB will help you find the root.

## Chapter 22

### Conjugations of Will, Part I

The imperfect and perfect conjugations are **declarative**. They make a simple declaration or assertion such as, “Pharaoh said to Moses.” Hebrew also has three **volitional** conjugations. The term volitional is from the Latin verb “to wish.” Speakers using these conjugations attempt to impose their will on someone or something. The three volitional conjugations are the **jussive**, **imperative**, and **cohortative**. Originally separate forms, now they work together to make up one volitional class.

Person	Conjugation	Translation (sample verb: עבד)
third	jussive	<i>Let him/her/them work.</i> <i>May he/she/they work.</i>
second	imperative	<i>Work!</i>
first	cohortative	<i>May I/we work.</i> <i>I/We might/can work.</i> <i>Let me/us work.</i>

The terms jussive and imperative are from Latin verbs meaning “to order” and “to command.” In Hebrew, these conjugations may be used for commands, and also advice, permission, requests, wishes, and so on. In other words, the degree to which the speaker exerts his or her will varies. Often the social status of the speaker relative to the hearer determines whether these forms are used as commands or requests.

This table serves as a guideline only because there is some confusion either in the Masoretic tradition or in our understanding. It is important to note that the jussive and cohortative often have the same form as the imperfect. Perfects may also be used

alongside imperatives in prayers. The infinitive absolute (which we will study later) can also be used as an imperative.

The volitional conjugations in this chapter are based on the Qal stem. Hiphil and Piel conjugations expressing will are dealt with in the next chapter.

### Qal Jussive

Some verbs have a short and long form of the imperfect. The short form is used with vav consecutive and is similar or identical to the jussive.

Conjugation	Example (verb: דָּוָה)	Translation
Imperfect	וּבֵית־אֵל יִהְיֶה לְאֵן:	Bethel shall become nothing (Amos 5:5)
Short Imperfect	וַיְהִי־אֹר	There was light (Gen 1:3)
Jussive	יְהִי אֹר	Let there be light (Gen 1:3)

Most verbs, however, do not have a short form of the imperfect. In that case, the forms of the imperfect and the jussive are the same. For these verbs, context indicates whether the form is an imperfect or a jussive.

In earlier forms of the language, there were short forms in all three persons but, by the time of Biblical Hebrew, the jussive occurred only in the second and third person. The second person jussive occurs with negation and is covered in Chapter 23.

The jussive forms of III-he<sup>3</sup> and II-vav or II-yod (hollow) verbs have missing letters. These forms are usually slightly different from the imperfect with vav consecutive.

The final he<sup>3</sup> is missing for jussive forms of **III-he<sup>3</sup>** verbs.

Root	Jussive	Translation
עלה	יַעַל	Let him go up; May he go up
היה	יְהִי	Let it be; May it be(come), happen
שתה	יִשְׁתֶּה	Let him drink; May he drink

The middle vav and yod is missing for the jussive forms of **hollow** verbs.

Root	Jussive	Translation
מוֹת	יָמוּתְ	Let him die; May he die
שׁוּב	יָשׁוּבְ	Let him return; May he return
שִׁים	יָשִׁיםְ	Let him place; May he place

### Qal Imperative

The imperative is similar to the form of the imperfect with the prefixes removed. Since this results in two vocal shevas in a row in the 2fs and 2mp forms, which Hebrew cannot tolerate, the first sheva turns into a *hireq*. (This is the rule of sheva.) The **indicator** of the imperative is a sheva or *hireq* under the first root letter.

PGN	Imperfect	Imperative
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	שְׁמֹר
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	שְׁמְרִי
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	שְׁמְרוּ
2fp	תִּשְׁמְרֶנָּה	שְׁמְרֶנָּה

**I-gutturals** take a composite sheva (usually *hateph pataḥ* but with I-<sup>3</sup>alephs, *hateph segol*) instead of a simple sheva in the 2ms and 2fp forms:

Root	Imperative	Translation
אכל	אֵכֶל	Eat! (2ms)
חַגַּר	חַגְרֶנָּה	Put on! (2fp)

Similarly, the 2fs and 2mp forms of **II-guttural verbs** take a composite sheva under the second root letter and the corresponding short vowel under the first root letter.

Root	Imperative	Translation
שאל	שאלִי	Ask! (2fs)
זעק	זעקוּ	Cry! (2mp)

**I-nun** verbs may or may not have the first nun. When they lose the first nun, they are also without the indicators of the imperative. לקח behaves like a I-nun, possibly because לקח “take” was closely associated with נתן “give” in the spoken language.

PGN	With nun	נתן	לקח
2ms	נָפַל	תֵּן	קַח
2fs	נָפַלִי	תֵּנִי	קַחִי
2mp	נָפְלוּ	תִּנּוּ	קַחוּ
2fp	נָפְלָנָה	תִּנְנָה	not attested

**I-vav** verbs are without indicators of the imperative because they lose their first root letter. As usual, הלך behaves like a I-vav verb.

PGN	ישב	ידע	הלך
2ms	יָשַׁב	יָדַע	לָךְ
2fs	יָשַׁבִי	יָדַעִי	לָכִי
2mp	יָשְׁבוּ	יָדְעוּ	לָכוּ
2fp	יָשְׁבָנָה	יָדְעָנָה	לָכְנָה

As in the imperfect, **III-he<sup>3</sup>** may be present, replaced by a yod, or absent. The forms for the verbs בָּנָה (build) and הָיָה (be, become) are:

PGN	בנה	היה
2ms	בָּנָה	הָיָה
2fs	בָּנִי	הָיִי
2mp	בָּנוּ	הָיוּ
2fp	בָּנִינָה	הָיִינָה

**Hollow** verbs have all root letters represented, but are missing the normal indicators.

PGN	קום	בוא	שים
2ms	קום	בוא	שים
2fs	קומִי	בֹּאִי	שִׁמִּי
2mp	קֻמוּ	בֹּאוּ	שִׁמוּ
2fp	קֻמְנָה	בֹּאנָה	שִׁמְנָה

When joined by a maqqeph to another word or particle, the vowel pointing of the imperative changes. For example:

שִׁמְרֵךְ becomes שְׁמֹר־לְךָ

The sheva under the first root letter still identifies this form as an imperative.

The lack of a pronoun identifies an imperative in English. Note that in Hebrew, however, a suffixed pronoun on lamed is idiomatic, as in the previous example.

## Qal Cohortative

The cohortative is similar to the first person imperfect forms with  $\text{נָֿ}$  on the end:

אֶשְׁמְרָה      נִשְׁמְרָה

The **indicators** for missing letters follow the same rules as for the imperfect: doubling indicates an assimilated nun; a tsere under an  $\text{א}$  or  $\text{נ}$  prefix indicates I-vav; a qamets under the prefix indicates a hollow verb.

**III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs** do not add the  $\text{נָֿ}$  ending. They use the imperfect forms.

**I-yod** cohortative forms are missing a root letter. The tsere (  $\text{ִֿ}$  ) is the same **indicator** as in the imperfect for the missing I-yod.

Root	Form	Translation
יֶשֶׁב	אֶשְׁבָּה	Let me live; May I live
	נִשְׁבָּה	Let us live; May we live

## Vocabulary

בַּעַל	owner, husband, lord; Baal
כְּבוֹד	abundance, honor, glory
כָּלָה	cease, come to an end, finish, complete
מַחֲנֶה	camp, army
מַלְאָךְ	messenger
מִנְחָה	gift; offering
נָטָה	turn, stretch out
עָזַב	leave, abandon
צַדִּיק	righteous, just (adj)
רָשָׁע	guilty, wicked (one) (adj) (f: רָשָׁעָה)



שָׁכַב	lie down; have sexual intercourse
שָׁלוֹם	peace, health
שָׁפַט	judge, enter into controversy; (Ni) plead
שָׁתָה	drink (verb)
תּוֹרָה	teaching, law

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

(Num 6.24–26) יְבָרְכֶךָ יְהוָה וְיִשְׁמְרֶךָ: ס  
 יֵאָרֵךְ יְהוָה<sup>a</sup> פָּנָיו אֵלֶיךָ וְיִחַנְךָ<sup>b1</sup>: ס  
 יִשָּׂא יְהוָה פָּנָיו אֵלֶיךָ וְיִשֶּׂם לְךָ שָׁלוֹם: ס  
 (יִחַיֶּךָ = <sup>b</sup> S *wnhjk* || יֵאִיר <sup>a</sup> 25)

(Exod 7:19–20) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה אֲמַר אֶל־אַהֲרֹן קַח מַטֶּיךָ  
 וּגְמַה־יִדָּךְ<sup>1</sup> עַל־מִימֵי מִצְרַיִם עַל־<sup>a</sup> נְהַרְתָּם עַל־<sup>b</sup> יְאִרֵיהֶם  
 וְעַל־אֲנָמִיהֶם וְעַל כָּל־מִקְוֵה מִימֵיהֶם וַיְהִי־דָם<sup>c</sup> וְהָיָה דָם<sup>c</sup>  
 בְּכָל־אֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם וּבְעֵצִים וּבְאֲבָנִים: וַיַּעַשׂ־כֵּן מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן  
 כָּל־הַמַּיִם כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה וַיָּרָם בַּמָּטָה<sup>a</sup> וַיָּיֵךְ אֶת־הַמַּיִם אֲשֶׁר  
 בַּיָּאֵר לְעֵינֵי פַרְעֹה וּלְעֵינֵי עַבְדָּיו וַיִּהְפְּכוּ אֲשֶׁר־בַּיָּאֵר לְדָם:  
 || וַיְהִי הַדָּם<sup>c-c</sup> || וְעַל<sup>b</sup> mlt Mss *uṯṯṯṯ* || <sup>a</sup> 19 pr cop ||  
 20<sup>a</sup> *uṯ* *cf* S) בַּמָּטָה

<sup>1</sup> “and be gracious to you”

2. Read and translate Genesis 1:26–31 using the following notes. You have already translated two verses of this passage in Chapter 20. Chart the verbs.

Verse 26

כְּדֹמוֹתָיו

Listed under the root דָּמָה. III-he' nouns (like verbs) can lose the final he' with the addition of a suffix.

הֹרֵמֶשׁ

“that creeps”—הֹרֵמֶשׁ is a ms Qal participle (with the article הֶ) complementing the ms collective noun רִמָּשׁ just before it. Qal participles are the subject of Chapter 25.

Verse 28

וְכִבְשֶׁהָ

This may be easier to identify spelled out in full, with the parts separated: וְ כִבְשֵׁי הָ

הֹרֵמֶשֶׁת

The fs Qal participle form (with the article הֶ) of the verb root רָמַשׁ. It can be translated like הֹרֵמֶשׁ in verse 26.

Verse 29

זֹרֵעַ

Literally: “seeding” (that is, “yielding” or “producing”). This is a ms Qal participle.

Verse 31

שְׁשִׁי

This is an ordinal number.

## Chapter 23

### Conjugations of Will, Part II

#### Negation

In the **third person**, Hebrew uses לֹא and the jussive, or sometimes אַל, in order to express negative volition (“Let it not ...”). לֹא and אַל normally come immediately before the verb, but may come before some other word or combination of words for emphasis.

In the **second person**, Hebrew uses either לֹא and the jussive, or אַל and the imperfect, to express negative commands. The first indicates urgency (“Stop...” or “Don’t...”), whereas the second indicates prohibition or legislation (“Do not [ever]...” or “You shall not...”). Remember that for many verbs the form of the jussive and imperfect are the same. In such cases, the context, and which of the two negative particles is used, will indicate whether it is a jussive or an imperfect.

In the **first person**, Hebrew uses the cohortative with לֹא in order to express negative will or desire (“Let us not...” or “May I not...”).

This table summarizes the expression of **negative volition** in Hebrew:

Person	Conjugation	Negative	Translation
Third	Jussive	לֹא	Let him/her/it not . . .
Second	Jussive	אַל	Stop . . . or: Don’t . . .
	Imperfect	אַל	Do not (ever) . . . You shall not . . .
First	Cohortative	לֹא	Let us/me not . . .

### Long Imperative Forms

Imperatives may also take a הַ ending, in which case the vowel pointing is often unusual:

Root	Imperative	Long Imperative	Translation
שָׁמַר	שָׁמֹר	שָׁמְרָה	Keep!
יָשַׁב	יָשֹׁב	יָשְׁבָה	Sit!
נָתַן	נָתֵן	נָתְנָה	Give!

### Piel and Hiphil Conjugations Expressing Will

The forms of the **Piel jussive** are the same as the forms of the Piel imperfect.

As in the Qal, the **Piel imperative** has the same form as the imperfect without the prefix. When the doubling of a middle root letter indicates a verb form is a Piel, a pataḥ (ַ) under the first root letter is the **indicator** of an imperative. When the middle root letter is a guttural (which cannot be doubled), then the pataḥ may, or may not, be lengthened to a qamets (ֶ).

Piel Imperative				
Root:	דָּבַר	מָאֵן	מָהַר	גָּלָה
2ms	דִּבֵּר	מֵאֵן	מִהֵר	גִּלֵּה
2fs	דִּבְרִי	מֵאֲנִי	מִהֲרִי	גִּלִּי
2mp	דִּבְרוּ	מֵאֲנִי	מִהֲרוּ	גִּלוּ
2fp	דִּבְרֹנָה	מֵאֲנִי	מִהֲרֹנָה	גִּלְּנָה

The **Piel cohortative**, like the Qal cohortative, has a qamets heʿ suffix (הֶ־). Otherwise the indicators and missing letters are the same as those of the Piel imperfect.

The **Hiphil jussive** has the same form as the short form of the Hiphil imperfect with vav consecutive. (All Hiphil verbal roots have a short form of the imperfect, unlike other stems where only some roots have short forms of the imperfect.) The **indicators** are

the same as for the imperfect—a dot vowel under the middle root letter and a pataḥ under the prefix. In the Hiphil, the short form usually has a tsere or segol as a dot vowel rather than a hireq yod. III-gutturals may have a pataḥ rather than a dot vowel, because gutturals prefer a-class vowels. The missing letters are the same as for the imperfect.

Root	Imperfect	With Vav Consec.	Jussive
I-nun	יִשְׁמִיד יִגִּיד	וַיִּשְׁמִיד וַיִּגִּיד	יִשְׁמִד יִגִּד
III-guttural	יִשְׁלַיִחַ	וַיִּשְׁלַח	יִשְׁלַח
III-heʿ	יַעֲלֶה	וַיַּעֲלֶה	יַעֲלֶה

As in other stems, the imperfect and imperative forms are closely related. In the **Hiphil imperative**, however, the heʿ prefix is present. The **indicator** of the Hiphil imperative, therefore, is a heʿ prefix, usually with a pataḥ under it (ה־). The indicator of the Hiphil stem is a dot vowel under the middle root letter.

Hiphil Imperative	
2ms	הִשְׁמֵר
2fs	הִשְׁמְרִי
2mp	הִשְׁמְרוּ
2fp	הִשְׁמְרֵנָה

The missing letters are the same as in the Hiphil imperfect.

The **Hiphil cohortative**, like the Qal cohortative, has a gamets heʿ ending (ה־ָ). The indicators and missing letters are the same as for the Hiphil imperfect.

### The Particle שׁ

Frequently attached to the jussive, imperative, and cohortative—or nearby words—is the particle שׁ. The traditional understanding is that it expresses a request or prayer and therefore

is translated as “please.” Lambdin, however, thinks it means that a request is a “logical consequence” of a preceding statement or situation (p. 170), and therefore prefers not to translate it.

## Narrative Sequences

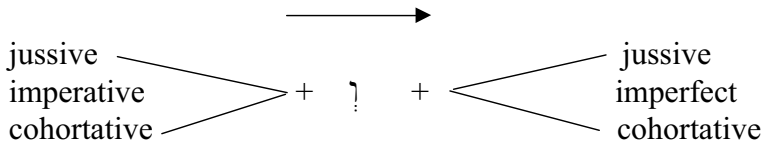
In the sequence

**imperative + ׀ + perfect,**

the perfect continues the imperative and should be translated as an imperative. Observe the following example and its translation:

<p>שָׁמַע בְּקוֹלָם וַהֲמִלְכָתָּ לָהֶם מֶלֶךְ</p>	<p><i>Listen (imperative) to their voice and make (perfect) a king reign over them (1 Sam 8:22)</i></p>
--	---

But any of the following similar sequences are **purpose** or **result clauses**:



Here is an example:

<p>אֲסֵרְהָנָא וְאֶרְאֶה</p>	<p><i>Let me turn aside (cohortative) so that I may see (imperfect) . . . (Exod 3:3)</i></p>
------------------------------	--

(Another purpose or result clause not covered in the above summary is: jussive + ׀ + imperative.) Because these sequences are purpose or result clauses, the ׀ will be translated “that” or “so that.”

## Disjunctive –׀

When a vav is prefixed to anything other than a finite verb, it disrupts the narrative sequence. In previous chapters, you have

learned about the vav prefixed to finite verbs. A vav consecutive (וַ) prefixed to an imperfect narrates the past. A vav (וַ) prefixed to the perfect narrates the future. In this chapter, you learned that a vav (וַ) prefixed to a volitional conjugation could introduce a purpose or result clause. A vav conjunction (וְ) prefixed to anything other than a finite verb, such as a noun, is disjunctive or parenthetical.

A **disjunctive** vav sometimes introduces a contrast and may be translated “but.”

וְלֹא־מֵצָא עֹזֶר כְּגֹדְדּוֹ:	<i>But</i> for Adam was not found a helper equal to him (Gen 2:20)
-----------------------------------	---

In addition, a disjunctive vav may introduce a new episode in a narrative and be translated “now.”

וְהָאָדָם יָדַע אֶת־חַוָּה אִשְׁתּוֹ וַתַּהַר:	<i>Now</i> the man knew Eve, his wife, and she conceived (Gen 4:1)
---	--

A **parenthetical** vav may be circumstantial, explanatory, or relative. When it is circumstantial, the vav can be translated “while,” “when,” “with,” or “since.”

הֲיִתְּהָ לִי עֹדֶנָּה וְאִדְנִי זָקֵן	Shall I have pleasure, <i>when</i> my husband is old? (Gen 18:12)
---	---

An explanatory vav can be translated “namely” or “that is.”

וַיִּשֶׁם יְהוָה אֶת חֶרֶב אִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ וּבְכָל־הַמַּחֲנֶה	The LORD set the sword of each man against his neighbor, <i>that is</i> , against the whole army (Judg 7:22)
--	---

These are just a few examples of the disjunctive and parenthetical uses and translations of the vav conjunction. Lexicons list the full range of uses and possible translations.

### Vocabulary

אָבד	perish; (Pi) destroy; (Hi) exterminate
אָזן	ear
בְּהֵמָה	cattle, animals
בָּקָר	cows (coll), herd(s), cattle
גָּלָה	uncover, reveal; depart, go into captivity
זָקֵן	old (adj); old man, elder (n)
חֵצֵר	permanent settlement, court, enclosure
יָכַל	be able (stative)
כַּף	hand, palm
לָכֵן	therefore (adv)
מִצְוָה	commandment
נָא	(particle of request)
סֵפֶר	scroll, inscription
רוּם	be(come) high, exalted
רֵעַ	friend, fellow, companion

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

סוֹר, מִרְעַ וְעָשָׂה-טוֹב בִּקְשׁ שְׁלוֹם (Ps 34:15 ET 14)

וַיֹּאמֶר מֹשֶׁה אֶסְרֶה-נָּא וְאֶרְאֶה אֶת-הַמְּרָאָה (Exod 3:3)  
הַגָּדֹל הַזֶּה



(Exod 3:10) וַעֲתָה לָכֶּה וְאַשְׁלַחְךָ אֶל־פַּרְעֹה וְהוֹצֵאתָ<sup>a</sup> אֶת־עַמִּי  
בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל מִמִּצְרָיִם: (את טסמ<sup>a</sup>)

(Exod 20:2–3) אַנְכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם  
מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים: לֹא יִהְיֶה־לְךָ אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים<sup>a</sup> עַל־פְּנֵי<sup>a</sup>:  
(3<sup>a-a</sup> ט[סט<sup>IP</sup>] πλὴν ἐμοῦ “except me”)

(Exod 34:9) וַיֹּאמֶר אֶם־נָא מֵצָאתִי חֵן בְּעֵינֶיךָ אֲדֹנָיִי יִלְךָ־נָא  
אֲדֹנָיִי<sup>b</sup> בְּקִרְבְּנוֹ  
(<sup>a</sup> > ט || <sup>b</sup> ט\* ὁ κύριός μου “my Lord”)

(Gen 22:5) וַיֹּאמֶר אַבְרָהָם אֶל־נַעֲרָיו שְׁבוּ־לָכֶם פֹּה עִם־הַחֲמוֹר  
וְאֲנִי וְהַנֶּעֱר גֵּלְכָה עַד־כֹּה ... וְנָשׁוּבָה אֵלֵיכֶם:

(Isa 43:12) אַנְכִי הַגִּדְתִּי וְהוֹשַׁעְתִּי וְהִשְׁמַעְתִּי וְאִין בְּכֶם זֶר  
וְאַתֶּם עַדִּי נֹאמְרִיהוּ<sup>a</sup> וְאֲנִי־אֵל:  
(<sup>a</sup> frt huc tr :.)

(Judg 13:9) וַיִּשְׁמַע הָאֱלֹהִים<sup>a</sup> בְּקוֹל מְנוּחַ וַיָּבֵא<sup>b</sup> מֶלֶאךָ<sup>c</sup> הָאֱלֹהִים<sup>c</sup>  
עוֹד אֶל־הָאִשָּׁה וְהִיא יוֹשֶׁבֶת<sup>1</sup> בַּשָּׂדֶה וּמְנוּחַ אִישָׁה אֵין עִמָּה:  
|| וַיֵּרָא<sup>b</sup> Ms || (58.72) κύριος “Lord” || <sup>a</sup> ט<sup>58.72</sup> ||  
<sup>c</sup> ט<sup>61</sup>(S) κυρίου “from [the] Lord”

<sup>1</sup> “was sitting” This is a participle. Participles with be discussed in Chapters 25 and 26.

## Chapter 24

### Genre and Tradition

Every culture has conventional ways of communicating for specific situations. Over time, for particular occasions and life experiences, people develop appropriate, conventional ways of expressing themselves. We know what to say, and how to say it, on certain occasions, such as marriages, funerals, and religious services. We write a love letter differently than a paper for school. And we expect those with whom we communicate to recognize these differences and react to our communications accordingly, otherwise mistakes could be humorous or embarrassing. These conventional ways of speaking or writing can be referred to as genres or forms.

#### Genre or Form Criticism

In biblical studies, the identification and analysis of typical ways of writing and speaking is called **genre criticism** or **form criticism**. The pioneer of this type of analysis in biblical studies was Hermann Gunkel. He wanted to get beyond the written sources back to the oral traditions and life experiences of the people. The typical setting, situation, or life experience he called *Sitz im Leben*, in German. The *Sitz im Leben* or “setting in life” is not one historical occasion, but a repeated situation, such as a harvest or a funeral.

Gunkel identified genres according to their form (grammar and vocabulary), content (mood and thoughts), and setting in life. Hebrew grammar and vocabulary are, therefore, important in identifying genres.

Unlike Gunkel, contemporary literary theory is less interested in the history behind a text, but nonetheless continues to be interested in its genre. **Genre** may be more broadly defined to

include mood, setting, function, speaker, and content. The well-known literary critic, Northrop Frye, notes that “the point of criticism by genres is not so much to classify as to clarify”<sup>1</sup> by bringing out all kinds of traditions, similarities, and literary relationships to which we might otherwise be blind. How a particular passage is similar to, and different from, the norm is significant for comprehending meaning.

## Law

There are two genres of **law** in the Pentateuch.

Some laws are **conditional** and they introduce the main regulation with כִּי “when” and various different conditions (or cases) with אִם “if.”

כִּי תִקְנֶה עֶבֶד עִבְרִי	<b>When</b> you buy a Hebrew slave,
שֵׁשׁ שָׁנִים יַעֲבֹד	he shall serve six years,
וּבְשִׁבְעָתָה יֵצֵא	and in the seventh he shall go out
לְחִפְשֵׁי חֲנָם:	free, for nothing.
אִם בָּנִיּוֹ יָבֹא	<b>If</b> he comes in single,
בָּנִיּוֹ יֵצֵא	he shall go out single;
אִם בָּעֵל אִשָּׁה הוּא	<b>if</b> he is married,
וְיֵצֵאתָ אִשְׁתּוֹ עִמּוֹ:	then his wife shall go out with him.
	(Exod 21:2-3).

The other genre is **absolute laws**.

לֹא תִרְצַח:	<b>You shall not murder!</b>
	(Exod 20:13)

The two types have a different form and content and may have a different social setting. The first type tends to deal with

---

<sup>1</sup> Northrop Frye, *Anatomy of Criticism* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1957), 247–248.

secular affairs in the land. The second type tends to deal with relationships between God and human beings.

## Prophets

Prophetic messages are the speeches of messengers. They use the language of non-prophetic messengers in the Hebrew Bible and the Ancient Near East. Jacob, for instance, sends messengers ahead to meet Esau and instructs them to say:

כֹּה אָמַר עַבְדְּךָ יַעֲקֹב      Thus says your servant  
Jacob (Gen 32:5 ET 4)

The character of prophecy as a message from God is evident in the common phrase, “thus says the LORD” (כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה).

The most prominent prophetic messages are **announcements of judgment** and **announcements of salvation**.

Announcements of judgment have three parts. Amos 7:16–17 can serve as an example:

1. <i>Reasons or</i>	וְעַתָּה שְׁמַע	Now hear
<i>Accusation</i>	דְּבַר־יְהוָה	the word of the LORD.
	אַתָּה אָמַר <sup>2</sup> לֹא	You say, “Do not
	תְּנַבֵּא <sup>3</sup> עַל־יִשְׂרָאֵל	prophesy against Israel,
	וְלֹא תִטֵּף	and do not preach
	עַל־בֵּית יִשְׁחָק <sup>4</sup> :	against the house of Isaac.”
2. <i>Therefore,</i>	לֵכֵן כֹּה־אָמַר	Therefore, thus said
<i>messenger</i>	יְהוָה	the LORD
<i>formula</i>		

<sup>2</sup> A Qal participle, which will be treated in the next chapter.

<sup>3</sup> A Niphal verb.

<sup>4</sup> An alternate spelling of “Isaac.” (There are two root words for “laugh”: צָחַק and שָׁחַק. The story of Isaac in Genesis contains a play on the word “laugh.”)

3. *Judgment*      <sup>5</sup>יִשְׂרָאֵל נִגְלָה ... “... Israel shall surely  
יִגְלָה מֵעַל go into exile away from  
אֶדְמָתוֹ: its land.”

Compare other examples in 1 Kings 21:1–19; 2 Kings 1:3–4; Isaiah 8:5–8; 22:8b–14; 28:7–13; 29:13–14; 30:12–14, 15–17; Micah 3:9–12.

## Writings

The *Kethuvim* (“Writings”) of the Hebrew Bible include the books of Psalms and Proverbs, as well as ten other works.

The two major genres of the book of Psalms are **hymns** and **laments**. The typical form of a hymn is a call to praise, in the imperative, followed by the reasons for praise, often introduced by כִּי “for.” Claus Westermann notes that the reasons for praise are often in two parts—God’s majesty and God’s goodness or grace. The following example is from Psalm 100:

*Imperative call*      ... הֲרִיעוּ *Make a joyful noise ...*  
*to praise*      ... עֲבֹדוּ אֶת־יְהוָה *Worship the LORD ...*

*God’s majesty*      יְהוָה ... ... the LORD is God ...  
... הוּא אֱלֹהִים

*Imperative call*      ... בָּאוּ *Enter ...*  
*to praise*      ... הוֹדוּ *Give thanks ...*  
... בִּרְכוּ *Bless ...*

*God’s*      כִּי־טוֹב יְהוָה *For the LORD is good;*  
*goodness*      ... לְעוֹלָם חֶסֶדּוֹ *eternal is his loyalty ...*

Compare also Psalms 95, 145, 148, 150.

---

<sup>5</sup> This is an infinitive absolute. It emphasizes the verb. Chapter 29 will discuss the infinitive absolute.

Genres by their nature are flexible and adaptable to mixing and use in new combinations. The word הוֹי “woe,” for example, is often used in **laments** for the dead.

וַיִּנַח <sup>6</sup> אֶת־נַבְלָתוֹ	He put to rest his body
בְּקִבְרוֹ	in his grave
וַיִּסְפְּדוּ עָלָיו	and they mourned over him,
הוֹי אָחִי:	“Woe, my brother.” (1 Kgs 13:30)

To announce God’s judgment on Israel the prophets use the genre of lament for the dead. Because of its sins, Israel is “dead.”

לֵכֵן <sup>6</sup> כֹּה־אָמַר יְהוָה	Therefore, thus says the LORD,
אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת אֲדֹנִי	God of hosts, my Lord:
בְּכָל־רְחֹבֹת מִסְפָּד <sup>7</sup>	In all the open places wailing,
וּבְכָל־חוֹצוֹת יֹאמְרוּ	and in all the streets they will say,
הוֹי־הוֹי	“Woe, woe.” (Amos 5:16a)

Creativity in the mixing of genres contributes power to prophetic preaching.

## Tradition

Traditions are closely related to genres. Traditions are handed down from generation to generation in certain settings in life and genres. A humorous example from our culture is the sports interview. Traditions about being a good sport and team player are repeated over and over using the same words. In Israel some proverbs may have been used to hand down wisdom traditions in the context of scribal schools.

Traditions have elements of continuity, community, and change. By their nature, traditions are handed down from one generation to the next. To be traditions they must have continuous,

---

<sup>6</sup> This verb is doubly weak and the vowel pointing is unusual. It is a Hiphil from נִיח.

<sup>7</sup> This is a Piel participle. Chapters 25 and 26 introduce participles.

identifiable form and content. Normally, this is related to the genres in which they are typically expressed. If they did not have identifiable form and content through the generations, they would be better described as recurring themes, motifs, or the like.

Traditions are the property of a community that maintains and passes them on to the next generation. For example, a family might keep stories about their ancestors, a town might keep stories about the naming of important places, priests might keep stories about Aaron and Levi, and the royal court might keep stories about the divine right of kings. Recurring themes, motifs, and the like, differ from traditions in that they are not the property of a particular community and do not have a continuous form and content.

Although traditions must have continuity from generation to generation, they must also be fluid. They must be flexible enough to allow them to adapt to changing needs and remain relevant and living. A tradition can be written down, but it must retain in writing the flexibility of oral traditions.

In biblical studies, tradition critics and historians are interested in identifying traditions, their community, their typical and unique uses, and the way they change and adapt to new situations in the life of the community. Knowledge of Hebrew is important for identifying the form and content of traditions.

## **Exercise**

Read aloud and translate Micah 6:1–5 with the assistance of the notes that follow. Micah makes use of a genre that was not discussed above. Verses 1–5 are the first part. Read verses 6–8 in English. Without consulting the scholarly literature, what do you think the genre is? What parts can you distinguish? What traditions are associated with this genre? What is its setting in life? Why does Micah make use of this genre?

### Verse 1

אָמַר  
אֵלֶּיךָ

“is saying” This form is a participle. They will be discussed in the next chapter.

רִיב

The Qal imperative 2ms and the ms noun have the same form. One appears in this verse and the other in the next verse.

Verse 2

וְהִאֲתַנִּים

This word is listed under יָתַן in BDB.

יִתְנַכַּח

“He will argue.” This is a Hitpael stem that will be discussed in Chapter 31.

Verse 5

רָעַת

“to know” An infinitive construct which will be discussed in Chapter 27.



## Chapter 25

### Participles, Part I

So far we have studied only **finite verbs**, which are verb forms limited or qualified with respect to person, gender, number, and aspect (duration or completeness of action). **Infinite verbs** are not limited or qualified. The distinction is only relative in Hebrew because the participle (see Chapters 25 and 26) can be marked for gender and number whereas the infinitive (Chapter 27) can be marked with suffixed pronouns.

#### Qal Participle

The name **participle** refers to its participation in the characteristics of both a noun and a verb, as seen in the examples below.

The participle takes endings for gender and number like those of the adjective and noun. The feminine singular ending, however, is more often  $\text{מְרָה}$  than  $\text{מְרָה}$ . The **indicator** of the **Qal participle** is a  $\text{הוֹלֵם}$  between the first and second root letters. The spelling may be full or defective.

ms	שֹׁמֵר	mp	שֹׁמְרִים
fs	שֹׁמֶרֶת שֹׁמְרָה	fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת

When they act like nouns, participles can be in construct, thus taking construct endings—the same construct endings as for nouns (see Chapter 9).

There are also much less frequently occurring **stative participles** of the form שֹׁמֵר (see Chapter 7 on stative verbs), as

well as **passive participles** of the form שָׁמוֹר. They take the same endings as the active participle in the above table.

... אֶהְבֶּת רֵעַ ... ... *who is beloved by (passive participle)*  
a companion ... (Hosea 3:1)

The gutturals cause some changes to the above patterns, but only in the III-he<sup>2</sup> and hollow verbs are there missing letters.

**III-he<sup>2</sup> verbs** other than the ms lose the final he<sup>2</sup>. Notice therefore that the only difference between the ms and fs form is the vowel pointing.

III-ה			
ms	גִּלָּה	mp	גִּלִּים
fs	גִּלָּה	fp	גִּלּוֹת

**Hollow verbs** have the following form:

Hollow			
ms	קָם	mp	קָמִים
fs	קָמָה	fp	קָמוֹת

As in the perfect, hollow verbs can take a-class (as in the example above), u-class or i-class vowels. The ms and fs participles have the same forms as the Qal perfect 3ms and 3fs. When you come across one of these ambiguous forms, it is probably a participle if:

1. It is parallel to another participle;
2. It appears with an independent pronoun or a suffixed pronoun (because the pronoun is included in the perfect);
3. It has a definite article (because the perfect cannot take a definite article).

## Use and Meaning of Participles

The participle can function as a **verb**. As verbs, participles express ongoing activity or being. The context indicates whether they should be translated as past, present, or future.

אָנָּה אַתָּה הֹלֵךְ      Where are you *going*? (Zech 2:6)

וְרִבְקָה אֲהָבָת אֶת־יַעֲקֹב      but Rebekah *loved* Jacob  
(Gen 25:28)

The participle may be used like an attributive or predicate adjective. As an **attributive adjective** it agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and definiteness.

יְהוָה כְּאֵשׁ אוֹכֶלֶת      The LORD is like a *devouring*  
fire (Exod 24:17)

As a **predicate adjective**, the participle is often translated by the English relative pronoun “who.”

מְלָאכִים הַבָּאִים יְרוּשָׁלַם      the messengers *who have*  
*come* to Jerusalem (Jer 27:3)

Like an adjective, a participle can function as a **noun**.

בְּיָמֵי שְׁפָט<sup>1</sup> הַשְּׁפָטִים      in the days *the judges*  
were judging (Ruth 1:1)

A participle may take **suffixes**.

הֲלֹא־בִבְטֵן עֲשֵׂנִי ...      Did not *the one who made me*  
in the womb ... ? (Job 31:15)

---

<sup>1</sup> This form is an infinitive construct, which you will learn in Chapter 27.

The suffix is typically the object of the verbal action (as in the above example), but may also be the subject.

Like an adjective or noun, a participle can be in **construct**.

בָּאֵי שַׁעַר-עִירוֹ      *the ones who were entering*  
the gate of his city (Gen 23:10)

Participles may be charted in the following manner (using אָהַבְתָּ from Hosea 3:1 as an example):

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features
אהב	Qal	passive participle	fs cstr	

## Vocabulary

אֲחֵר	another
אֵיל	ram
אֶדְ	only; surely (adv)
בָּחַר	choose
בִּין	understand, perceive
גִּבּוֹר	warrior, mighty man
דּוֹר	generation, lifetime, life-span
דָּרַשׁ	seek
הָרַג	kill
זָבַח	sacrifice (noun)
חוּץ	place outside the house, street (noun); outside, without (prep, adv)
שָׁפָה	lip; shore
שִׁבְט	rod, staff; tribe
שָׁבַע*	(Ni, Hi) swear
שָׁמֶן	oil

(Exod 3:5) שֶׁל־נִעְלָדָה מֵעַל רִגְלֶיךָ כִּי הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה עומד עליו אדמת־קֹדֶשׁ הוּא:

(Lev 25:2) דִּבֶּר אֶל־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאָמַרְתָּ אֲלֵהֶם כִּי תִבְאוּ  
אֶל־הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי נֹתֵן לָכֶם וּשְׁבַתָּהּ הָאָרֶץ שִׁבְתָּ לִיהוָה:

(Exod 21:2-3) כִּי תִקְנֶה עֶבֶד עֲבָדִי שָׁשׁ שָׁנִים יַעֲבֹד וּבְשִׁבְעַת יָצֵא לַחֲפָשִׁי חֲנֹם: אִם-בְּגִפּוֹ<sup>a</sup> יָבֹא בְּגִפּוֹ<sup>a</sup> יֵצֵא אִם-בְּעַל אִשָּׁה<sup>b</sup> הוּא וַיֵּצֵאָה אִשְׁתּוֹ עִמּוֹ:  
(3<sup>a</sup> || בּגפּוֹ<sup>a</sup> || 5טז<sup>b</sup> pr cop)

(Exod 20:12–15) כִּבֵּד אֶת־אָבִיךָ וְאֶת־אִמְךָ לְמַעַן<sup>a</sup> יֵאָרְכוּן יָמֶיךָ  
עַל הָאָדָמָה<sup>b</sup> אֲשֶׁר־יִהְיֶה אֲלֶיךָ נָתַן לָךְ: ס לֹא תִרְצָח: ס  
לֹא תִנָּאֵף: ס לֹא תִגְנוֹב: ס

(12<sup>a</sup> Pap Nash 𐤀 + 𐤋𐤍𐤅𐤍 || <sup>b</sup> 𐤀 + τῆς ἀγαθῆς “the good” ||

13<sup>a</sup> 6\* ordinat 14.15.13 et Pap Nash Philo [De Decalogo 12]

Lc 18,20 Rm 13,9 ordinat 14.13.15)

## Chapter 26

### Participles, Part II

#### Hiphil Participle

The **indicator** of the Hiphil participle is a prefixed mem with a pataḥ under it: – מְ.

ms	מְשַׁמֵּר	mp	מְשַׁמְּרִים
fs	מְשַׁמֶּרֶת	fp	מְשַׁמְּרוֹת

The **indicator** is different for **I-vav**, **I-yod**, and **hollow** verbs.

Root	ms participle
יָשַׁב (original I-vav)	מוֹשֵׁב
יָטַב (I-yod)	מִיטִיב
קָוָה (hollow)	מְקַיֵּם

In the other forms of the hollow verbs, adding the suffixes causes the reduction of the vowel under the prefix to – מְ.

מְקַיְּמוֹת (fp) מְקַיְּמָה (fs) מְקַיְּמִים (mp)

The – מְ looks like the indicator of a Piel participle (see below), but the hireq yod distinguishes a Hiphil from a Piel participle.

#### Piel Participle

The **indicator** of the Piel participle is a prefixed mem with a sheva under it: – מֶ. The indicator of the Piel stem continues to be the doubling of the middle root letter. The participle has a pataḥ under the first root letter, as do the imperative and imperfect.

Piel Participle			
ms	מְשַׁמֵּר	mp	מְשַׁמְּרִים
fs	מְשַׁמֶּרֶת	fp	מְשַׁמְּרוֹת

When the middle root letter is a guttural or has a sheva under it, the dagesh in the middle root letter may be missing. The he<sup>3</sup> is missing on III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs in the same way as in the Qal.

### Vocabulary

אַשּׁוּר	Assyria; Assyrian
הָלַל*	(Pi) praise; (Hitp) boast
חִכְמָה	experience, wisdom
טָמֵא	be unclean (stative)
כַּנָּף	wing
לָחַם	(Ni) fight
לָמָּה לָמָּה	why?
מְלָאכָה	work
נוּס	flee
סָפַר	write, count, number; (Pi) recount, report, enumerate
פֶּתַח	gate, opening, entrance
קָדַשׁ	be holy; (Pi) consecrate
רוּץ	run
רָעָה	feed, graze, tend (cattle)
רַק	only (adv)
שָׁאַל	ask (for), demand
שָׁחַת	(Ni) be corrupt, spoiled; (Pi) spoil, ruin; (Hi) destroy

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

עַל הַר־גִּבְעָה<sup>a</sup> עָלִי־לָךְ מִבְּשֶׁרֶת צִיּוֹן הָרִימִי בַּפֹּחַ קוֹלְךָ  
מִבְּשֶׁרֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם הָרִימִי אֶל־תִּירָאִי אִמְרִי לְעַרְנִי יְהוּדָה הִנֵּה  
אֱלֹהֵיכֶם:  
(<sup>a</sup> sic L, mlt Mss Edd יה–)

וְשִׁמְתִי כָל־הָרִי לְדֶרֶךְ וּמִסְלָתִי יִרְמֹן<sup>1</sup>: (Isa 49:11)

הַשָּׁמַיִם מְסַפְּרִים כְּבוֹד־אֱלֹ  
וּמַעֲשָׂה<sup>a</sup> יָדָיו מִגִּיד הָרָקִיעַ: (–שִׁי טו' טו' מ' pc Mss <sup>a</sup> ט' ט' ט' ט')

הִנְנִי<sup>p</sup> מֵבִיא אוֹתָם מֵאֶרֶץ צָפוֹן וְקִבְצָתִים  
מִירְכַּת־אֶרֶץ<sup>a</sup> בָּם עוֹר וּפֶסֶח<sup>a</sup> הָרָה וּלְדַת יַחֲדוֹ  
קָהָל גָּדוֹל יָשׁוּבוּ הִנֵּה<sup>b</sup>:  
(<sup>a-a</sup> ט' εἰν' εἰσπῆ φασεκ = פֶּסַח || <sup>b</sup> 1 הִנֵּה et cj c 9)

2. Read aloud and translate Exodus 3:1–7 using the following notes. Chart the verbs.

<u>Verse 2</u>	וַיֵּרָא	Niphal: “appeared”
	אָכַל	Pual: “consumed”
<u>Verse 4</u>	לִרְאוֹת	“to see” (infinitive construct)
<u>Verse 7</u>	רָאָה	“surely” (infinitive absolute)

<sup>1</sup> The sheva under the prefix looks like the indicator of the Piel imperfect, but the middle root letter is not doubled.



## Chapter 27

### Infinitive Construct

In addition to the participle, Hebrew has two other infinitive forms: the infinitive absolute and the infinitive construct. Whereas the participle focuses on the action or situation of the subject or object of the verb, the infinitive focuses on the verb's action or situation. Some grammarians object to the name infinitive construct because it sounds like it is a construct form of the infinitive absolute. The two infinitives, in fact, have different origins. One is not the construct of the other.

#### Form of the Qal Infinitive Construct

The **indicator** of the Qal infinitive construct is a sheva under the first root letter. The form of the infinitive construct is:

שָׁמֵר

The form and indicator of the Qal infinitive construct are the same as the ms imperative. The context will distinguish the two verb types.

Before most suffixes, the form of the infinitive construct is:

שָׁמְרָה-

Before 2ms and 2mp suffixes, or when attached by a maqqeph to a following word, the form of the infinitive construct is:

שָׁמְרָה-

The qamets in the previous examples is a qamets ḥatuph, pronounced “o.” Sometimes the infinitive construct before suffixes has hireq or pataḥ instead of qamets.

שָׁמַר-  
שָׁמַר-

Several types of verb roots have missing letters. **III-heʿ** roots take an הֵ- ending:

בָּנוּת  
עָשׂוּת  
הָיוּת

**I-vav** verbs lose the vav and add a tav ending. As usual, הִלָּךְ acts like a I-vav.

Root	Infinitive Construct		With Suffixes	
יָשַׁב	שָׁבַת	to dwell	שָׁבַתִּי	my dwelling
יָצָא	צָאָה	to go out	צָאָתִי	my going out
יָדַע	יָדַעַת	to know	יָדַעַתִּי	my knowing
הִלָּךְ	לָכַת	to walk	לָכַתִּי	my walking

**I-nun** verbs may retain their nun and be regular or lose their nun and add a tav like I-vav verbs. Some verbs show forms both with and without nun. לָקַח, as one would expect, loses its first root letter like a I-nun.

Root	Infinitive Construct		
	With nun	Without nun	
נָטַע	נָטַעַת	טָעַת	to plant
נָתַן	נָתַן	תָּתַת	to give
לָקַח		קָחַת	to take

Notice that the final nun of נָתַן also may assimilate.

The forms of infinitives construct of **hollow** verbs are:

Infinitive Construct	Translation
קום	to arise, arising
בוא	to come, coming
שית	to put, putting

There are no changes when suffixes are added.

### Stems other than Qal

In the stems other than Qal the form of the infinitive construct is usually the same as the form of the ms imperative. The **Hiphil** often has הִשְׁמַר for the ms imperative and הִשְׁמִיר for the infinitive construct, but occasionally הִשְׁמַר also appears to be an infinitive construct. The **Piel** ms imperative and infinitive construct are both שִׁמַּר.

The Hiphil and Piel infinitive construct forms of roots with weak letters will be outlined in Chapter 29.

### Use and Meaning of the Infinitive Construct

A common use of the infinitive construct is with the prefixed prepositions beth (בְּ-), kaph (כְּ-) and lamed (לְ-).

Clauses expressing time, called **temporal clauses**, often use the preposition beth (בְּ-) or kaph (כְּ-). According to Ernst Jenni, the bet (בְּ-) expresses the closeness of two events (“When...”), whereas the kaph (כְּ-) expresses the time immediately before an event (“As soon as...”).

בֶּן-שְׁלֹשִׁים שָׁנָה דָּוִד  
בְּמָלְכוֹ

David was thirty years old  
when he became king (2 Sam 5:4)

וַיְהִי כַּמֶּלֶךְ  
הָכָה אֶת-כָּל-בֵּית  
יִרְבֹּעַם

as soon as he became king,  
he killed the whole house  
of Jeroboam (1 Kgs 15:29)

Separable prepositions used with the infinitive construct to introduce temporal clauses are עַד “until,” אַחֲרֵי / אַחֲרָי “after,” and מִן “from.”

Temporal clauses may use the infinitive construct, or use כִּי with a finite verb. They may begin with וַיְהִי for the past, as in the previous example, and וַיְהִי־לָּהּ for the future, as in the next example.

וַיְהִי כִּי־תָבֹאוּ אֶל־הָאָרֶץ	<i>when you enter the land</i>
אֲשֶׁר יִתֵּן יְהוָה לָכֶם ...	<i>that the LORD will give to you ... (Exod 12:25)</i>

The infinitive construct with a prefixed lamed (ל־) has a wide range of uses that complete or explain another verb by answering the implied questions why, what, or how. For example, it may answer the question why and express purpose, result, or intention.

סָר לְרֹאוֹת	<i>he turned aside to see</i>
(Exod 3:4)	

The vowels under the lamed (ל־) are due to the rule of sheva.

לְרֹאוֹת > לְרֹאוֹת\*

Second, the infinitive construct with lamed (ל־) may complete a verb by answering the question what?

מִי יוּכַל לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי יְהוָה	<i>Who is able to stand before the LORD? (1 Sam 6:20)</i>
-----------------------------------	---

Third, it may explain a verb by answering the question how?

כִּי־יִסֶּיֶת אֶתְכֶם לְאֹמֶר	<i>when he tempts you by saying, the</i>
יְהוָה יִצִּילֵנוּ:	<i>LORD can deliver us (2 Kgs 18:32)</i>

These uses of the infinitive construct with lamed (ל־) are adverbial. An adverb modifies a verb. In addition, the infinitive construct may function as a verb or a noun. The use of the infinitive construct with beth and kaph in temporal clauses is an example of the use of the infinitive construct as a **verb**.

Other types of clauses may use the infinitive construct as a verb with prefixed or independent prepositions, including clauses expressing **cause** (“because”) and **result** (“that”).

בְּשִׂנְאָתְךָ יְהוָה אֶתָּנוּ      because the LORD *hates* us  
(Deut 1:27)

As a verb, the infinitive construct may have a **modal** meaning in clauses with יֵשׁ (“is”) or אֵין (“is not”), and without another verb. A variety of prepositions may be used, but most common are ל־ (indicating possibility or permission) or עַל (indicating obligation or permission).

מָה לַעֲשׂוֹת לָךְ      What can be done for you?  
הֵיִשׁ לְדַבֵּר לָךְ      May one speak for you  
אֶל־הַמֶּלֶךְ      before the king? (2 Kgs 4:13)

When the infinitive construct has **suffixed pronouns**, they may be either the subject or the object of the verb.

עֲזַבְךָ אֶת־יְהוָה      *your abandoning* the LORD  
(Jer 2:17)  
לְעֲזֹבְךָ מֵאַחֲרַיִךְ      *to abandon you* by turning back  
from following you (Ruth 1:16)

In addition to its uses as an adverb and verb, the infinitive construct can play any role in a sentence that a **noun** would.

טוֹב לְהַדוֹת<sup>1</sup> לַיהוָה      to give thanks to the LORD  
is good (Ps 92:2)

The infinitive construct is usually negated with בִּלְתִּי. A lamed is prefixed to בִּלְתִּי rather than to the infinitive construct.

צִוִּיתִיךָ לְבִלְתִּי אֲכַל-מִמֶּנּוּ      I commanded you *not* to eat  
from it (Gen 3:11)

The infinitive construct may be charted in the following manner (using לַעֲזֹבֶיךָ from Ruth 1:16 as an example):

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features
עזב	Qal	infinitive construct		prefixed preposition: ל 2fs pronoun suffix: ךָּ

## Vocabulary

יוֹאָב	Joab
כִּסָּה*	(Pi) cover, conceal
לְבַד	alone (adv); besides (prep)
מָוֶת	death
נֶגֶד	opposite, before (noun, prep, adv)
נָגַע	touch, reach; come to
נָסַע	depart

<sup>1</sup> This is a Hiphil infinitive construct. The root ידה here is both doubly weak (the he<sup>3</sup> has disappeared and the yod has changed) and defective in spelling (the ḥolem vav typical of Hiphil forms has reduced to a ḥolem).

עֵדָה	congregation
פָּר פָּרָה	young bull (m); cow (f)
פָּתַח	open; (Pi) loosen, free
צִדְקָה	righteousness
צָפוֹן	north
רַב	multitude, abundance
שָׂמַח	rejoice; (Pi) gladden
שָׂנֵא	hate; (Qal and Pi part) adversary, enemy

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

(Gen 2:19) וַיִּצְרֹךְ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים<sup>a</sup> מִן־הָאֲדָמָה<sup>b</sup> כָּל־חַיֵּית  
הַשָּׂדֶה וְאֵת כָּל־עוֹף הַשָּׁמַיִם וַיָּבֵא אֶל־הָאָדָם  
לְרְאוֹת מַה־יִּקְרָא־לּוֹ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא־לּוֹ  
הָאָדָם<sup>c</sup> נִפְשׁ חַיָּה<sup>c</sup> הוּא שְׁמוֹ:  
(<sup>a</sup> w 6 + עוד || <sup>b</sup> ins c w || <sup>c-c</sup> frt add)

(Gen 2:15) וַיִּקַּח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם  
וַיִּנְחֵהוּ בְּגֶן־עֵדֶן לְעַבְדָּהּ וּלְשִׁמְרָהּ:

2. Read and translate Deuteronomy 6:1–9. Chart the verbs.

## Chapter 28

### Hebrew Narrative

In his 1968 Presidential Address to the Society of Biblical Literature in the United States, James Muilenburg suggested that biblical scholars should pay more attention to the art of composition. This address was an early signal of a shift in biblical studies away from the intention of the author as the source of the meaning of a passage, and toward the passage itself and the reader as the sources of meaning. The shift moves away from historical investigation in order to determine the intention of the author and toward literary study of the text and how it affects the reader. For many this is a shift in emphasis rather than a choice of one or the other.

Since Muilenburg, the number of newer, literary studies of both prose and poetry is steadily increasing. A later chapter will focus on poetry. This chapter focuses on one type of prose, that is, narrative. A **narrative** tells a story or a series of events, either real or imagined.

Many of those writing current, literary studies of Hebrew narrative call their work **narrative criticism**. Although they use a variety of different literary theories, they analyze plot, character, setting, narrator, point of view, and style.

#### Plot

In literary studies, the **plot** is the principle(s) that connect(s) all the incidents in a story, and creates a beginning, middle, and end. The incidents in a story may or may not occur in chronological order. Literary critics often analyze the conflict that drives a plot, including the climax and resolution of the conflict. David Gunn suggests that the plot of a story can also be uncovered by asking: “Who desires what and when? When are their desires



fulfilled?” This way of asking about plot, he says, frees the interpreter from the question of who is the main character determining the interpretation.<sup>1</sup> It also makes the connection, widely recognized and debated in literary studies, between plot and character.

## **Character**

Literary criticism distinguishes between flat characters, round characters, and agents. Flat characters have only one or two personality traits (such as greed or kindness). Round characters are more complex, possibly changing as the narrative progresses. Agents are present merely to play a role in advancing the plot.

The Hebrew Bible rarely describes the physical features, or psychological characteristics or motives of the characters in a narrative. This contrasts with European novels that often provide detailed descriptions of characters. Hebrew narrative uses a high proportion of dialogue between characters. There are normally only two characters in a dialogue. Different styles of speech may correspond to different characters, for example, using long, flowing speeches, or being silent, or speaking briefly or abruptly. The relation of speech to action also brings out character. The large amount of dialogue in Hebrew narrative is a dramatic and realistic way of portraying characters.

Although the narrator says little, sometimes there are clues to the narrator's interpretation of the story.

## **Narrator and Point of View**

The narrator is the person who tells the story. The narrator may or may not be identical with the author, and may or may not be a character in the story. The narrator may tell the story in first or third person. In the Hebrew Bible, the narrator often is not identified with a particular character, but speaks in the third

---

<sup>1</sup> “Narrative Criticism,” in *To Each Its Own Meaning*, eds. Steven L. McKenzie and Stephen R. Haynes (Louisville: Westminster/John Knox, 1999), 180.

person, and seems to be all knowing. This “god-like” narration gives the Bible authority and influences our interpretations.

A closely related issue in interpretation is **point of view**, also called frame, perspective, or focalization. Point of view is similar to the limited field of view of a television camera. I once attended a protest demonstration in a large park. In the expanses of the park the crowd seemed small and disappointing to me. When I saw the protest on television that evening, the cameras focused on the crowd. No empty spaces were visible. The impression was quite different and a vivid illustration to me of the way television influences our interpretation of events.

Similarly, the narrator frames a story, decides what we see and do not see, what is in focus and what is out of focus. The point of view of the narrator influences and guides our interpretation.

### **Setting**

In literature the setting is the time, place, and environment of a story or play. Rain, for example, often reflects a somber mood. Biblical stories often occur in places associated with religious and political significance.

### **Style and Rhetorical Criticism**

Every culture has rules for communicating. We have already seen some of these rules in our study of genre or form. The title of Muilenburg’s address is “Form Criticism and Beyond.” In addition to studying genre, he wanted to study rules of composition or style. Muilenburg named this art of composition rhetoric and its analysis **rhetorical criticism**. Within biblical studies some people use rhetorical criticism in the narrow sense of analyzing how an author attempts to persuade an audience. Muilenburg and others use it in the broader sense of analyzing the compositional features a text uses to communicate meaning.

Among the habits or rules of Hebrew narrative composition are various types of **repetition**. One that requires some Hebrew to identify is what is known as a *Leitwort* (German for “guide word”). A *Leitwort* is a word that, because of its repetition and prominence, gives structure and emphasis to a passage. For example,

Also characteristic of Hebrew storytelling are omissions or **gaps**. A gap is an essential word or piece of information that is left out.

In *Rhetorical Criticism*, Tribble outlines a method for doing rhetorical criticism.<sup>2</sup> This method includes looking for plot and character (already discussed above). What is of interest here is how she goes about studying the composition or style of a passage. As she reads the passage many times, she looks for the repetition of sounds, words, phrases, and sentences.

**a** **b**  
*Bless the-LORD,* *all-his-works,*  
\  
/  
**b'** **a'**  
*in-all-places of-his-realm,* *bless the-LORD, O-my-soul.*

This is also an example of *inclusio* because Psalm 103 begins and ends with “Bless the LORD, O my soul.” **Inclusio** is the

<sup>2</sup> Pp. 101–106.

repetition of the same word, phrase, or sentence at the beginning and end of a passage.

Chiasmus may also occur over larger passages. For example, Tribble, following Lohfink, sees a chiasm in Chapter 1 of Jonah:

- A Framework (1:4–6)
- B Two speeches by the sailors (1:7–8)
- Center Confession of Jonah (1:9–10a)
- B' Two speeches by the sailors (1:10a–11)
- A' Framework (1:12–16)

This kind of literary structure often displays or sets off the material in the center, like a fine gem set on a ring.

Tribble also notices **word order**. Deviations from normal word order, such as putting the subject before the verb in Hebrew, are for emphasis. In addition, the placement of small **particles** like **כִּי**, **הִנֵּה**, and **לָכֵן** are important signs of movement and emphasis in Hebrew narrative.

When you are studying a passage, you may want to make copies, and mark or highlight elements you notice. As you read, also look for narrative and rhetorical features already discussed above.

As a way of seeing rhetorical features and helping others see them (particularly if they do not know Hebrew), you may want to make a word-for-word translation. (A dynamic translation into English would obscure the Hebrew patterns.) As in the example above, Tribble joins with hyphens English words that are a single Hebrew word. She then uses different types of underlining to highlight repetitions. This visual presentation should be accompanied by an explanation of the patterns and how they relate to the content and meaning of the passage.

## Exercise

Translate Exodus 3:8–15 and discuss the literary features of Exodus 3:1–15. (You read Exodus 3:1–7 in Chapter 26.)

## Chapter 29

### Infinitive Absolute

#### Form of the Qal Infinitive Absolute

The form of the Qal infinitive absolute is:

שָׁמֹר

III-he<sup>3</sup> roots, as well as II-vav and II-yod roots, have unique forms of the infinitive absolute. Note the Qal infinitive absolute of **III-he<sup>3</sup>** verbs:

גָּלוּ

or

גָּלָה

The Qal infinitives absolute of **II-vav** and **II-yod** verbs have the same form:

Root	Infinitive Absolute
קָם	קָם
שָׂם	שָׂם

The infinitive absolute does not take prefixes or suffixes.

#### Use and Meaning

The infinitive absolute most often comes before or after a finite verb. Although some grammars distinguish between the meanings depending on the position of the infinitive absolute, there is no convincing evidence for this distinction. The use of the

infinitive absolute before or after a finite verb emphasizes the *intensity* or *certainty* of the finite verb.

מֹות יָמוּת                      he will *surely* die  
(1 Sam 14:39)

The infinitive absolute may also be used as an **imperative**:

זָכוֹר אֶת־יְוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת                      *Remember* the Sabbath day  
(Exod 20:8)

Intermediate and advanced reference grammars list other less frequent uses of the infinitive absolute.

### Piel and Hiphil Infinitives

Piel infinitives construct and absolute have the same form. The form of both **Piel infinitives** is the same as the ms Piel imperative. As with the imperative, the **indicator** of the Piel infinitive is a pataḥ under the first root letter. When the second root letter is a guttural or resh, the pataḥ may or may not lengthen to a qamets. The Piel infinitive construct of III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs adds an ׀-ending that distinguishes it from the absolute.

Root		Infinitive Absolute	Infinitive Construct
Strong	גָּדַל	גִּדֹּל	גִּדֹּל
II-resh	בָּרַךְ	בִּרְךְ	בִּרְךְ
II-guttural	בָּעַר	בִּיעַר	בִּיעַר
III-he <sup>3</sup>	צוּה	צִוֶּה	צִוֶּה

The **Hiphil infinitive absolute** usually has the same form as the ms imperative. As shown in the table below, the **construct** tends to have a hireq yod instead of a tsere under the middle root letter. Like the Piel, the Hiphil infinitive construct of III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs has an ׀-ending.

Root		Infinitive Absolute	Infinitive Construct
Strong	שׁמַד	הִשְׁמַד	הִשְׁמִיד
III-he <sup>3</sup>	גָּלָה	הִגְלָה	הִגְלוֹת
I-nun	נָגַד	הִנָּד	הִנִּיד
I-vav	יָשַׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוֹשִׁיב
Hollow	קָוַם	הִקָּוַם	הִקָּוִם

### Vocabulary

אָז	then (adv)
מֵאָז	formerly, since (adv, prep)
זָבַח	slaughter, sacrifice; (Pi) sacrifice
חָכַם	wise (adj)
חָנָה	encamp
יָחַד	community (noun)
יַחְדָּו	together, at the same time (adv)
יַיִן	wine
יְמִין	right hand/side; south
יֵשׁ	there is, there are
כְּמוֹ	just like (relative particle)
כִּסֵּא	seat, throne
מִסְפָּר	number (noun)
מֵעַל	upwards (adj); above (prep)
מִשְׁכָּן	dwelling, tabernacle
נִוַּח	rest, settle down, make quiet; (Hi) lay, deposit
רָעַב	hunger, famine
שֶׁ- שָׁ- שֵׁ-	who, which, that (prefixed relative particle; the following consonant takes a dagesh)

## Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

(Gen 3:16) אֵל־הָאִשָּׁה אָמַר הָרְבָּה אֲרָבָה עֲצָבוֹנָךְ וְהָרִינָךְ<sup>b</sup>  
 בְּעֵצִים<sup>c</sup> תֵּלְדִי בָנִים<sup>d</sup> וְאֵל־אִישׁ<sup>d</sup> תְּשׁוּקֶתְךָ וְהוּא יִמְשַׁלְּ-בְּךָ<sup>d</sup>: ס  
 וְהִינָךְ = וְהָרִינָךְ; καὶ τὸ στεναγμόν σου (a 1 c w טס ואל || b frt 1 c w וְהָרִינָךְ; || c w בעצבון || d-d cf 4,7<sup>b-b</sup>)

2. Read aloud and translate Ecclesiastes 3:1–8. Chart the verbs.



## Chapter 30

### Niphal

#### Perfect

The **indicator** of the Niphal perfect is a nun prefixed to the three root letters.

The 3ms Niphal perfect is:

נִשְׁמַר            he was kept (passive); *or*  
                     he kept himself (reflexive)

The suffixes of the perfect are the same as in the Qal stem.

With **I-nun** verbs, the nun assimilates into the following root letter.

Qal Perfect 3ms	Niphal Perfect 3ms
נִשְׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר

**I-vav** verbs keep the original vav after the nun.

Qal Perfect 3ms	Niphal Perfect 3ms
נִדְרַע	נִדְרַע

**Hollow** verbs have a qamets under the nun prefix (compare the Qal imperfect of hollow verbs). With suffixes that begin with consonants (that is, all the second and first person forms), the vowel under the prefix reduces to a sheva and there is a **holem vav** before the suffix.

PGN	Qal Perfect	Niphal Perfect
3ms	רָם	נָרָם
2ms	רָמַתְּ	נָרַמְתָּ

Fortunately, hollow verbs are rare in Niphal.

With **I-gutturals** the pointing under the nun can be נָ, נַ or נִ.

נִעֲזַב

Note: The Niphal perfect 3ms can have the same form as the Qal imperfect 1cp with III-guttural (נִשְׁמַע) and III-<sup>3</sup>aleph (נִמְצָא) roots and a similar form with III-he<sup>3</sup> roots (Qal: נִגְלָה Niphal: נִגְלָה). For the first two roots, only context tells you which one it is. With III-he<sup>3</sup> roots, the qamets (ִ) under the second root letter is characteristic of the Niphal.

### Imperfect

The **indicator** of the Niphal imperfect is a dagesh in the first root letter and a qamets under it. The nun prefix assimilates into the first root letter with the addition of imperfect prefixes.

יִשְׁמַר

The dagesh is missing with **I-gutturals**, but the qamets under the first root letter continues to identify the Niphal imperfect.

יִעֲזַב

The indicators are also present with I-nun and I-vav verbs. The first nun of the root remains in **I-nun** verbs.

יִנְצִל

The original vav appears in **I-vav** verbs.

יָלַד (from יֵלֵד)

**Hollow** verbs do not have a qamets under the first root letter.

יָכֹן

## Imperative and Infinitives

The Niphal infinitive construct has the same form as the 2ms imperative. The **indicator** of the Niphal imperative and infinitive construct is הִ. The other indicators seen in the imperfect—the doubling of the first root letter with a qamets under it—distinguish the Niphal imperative and infinitive from the Hiphil perfect, which also begins with הִ.

הִשְׁמַר

The **indicator** of the Niphal **infinitive absolute** is a holem between the second and third root letters. The form is either:

הִשְׁמֹר

or

הִשְׁמָר

## Participle

ms	הִשְׁמֹר	mp	הִשְׁמֹרִים
fs	הִשְׁמֹרֶה הִשְׁמֹרֶת	fp	הִשְׁמֹרוֹת

## Meaning of the Niphal

If you look back at the chart of the meaning of verb stems in Chapter 15, you will see that Niphal is the passive or reflexive form corresponding to the Qal. (Grammarians debate what is the original or basic meaning of the Niphal.) In order to express the

reflexive or passive (or middle) of a Qal verb, Hebrew most often uses the Niphal stem.

Compare the following English sentences:

Active:	She	saved	him
	(subject)	(verb)	(object)
Passive:	She	was saved	by him.
	(subject)	(verb)	(agent)
Reflexive:	She	saved	herself.
	(subject)	(verb)	(subject as own agent)

Passive verbs in English usually involve some form of the verb “to be,” such as “was” in the above example. In Hebrew **passive** means that the subject receives the action of the verb. The agent of the action may be explicit or implicit, and the passive may be used personally or impersonally.

וַיִּפְתַּח אֶת־פִּי ...      And he opened my mouth ...  
וַיִּפְתַּח פִּי      so my mouth *was opened*  
(Ezek 33:22)

עַל־כֵּן יֵאמָר בְּסֵפֶר      Thus *it is said* in the book  
מִלְחָמֹת יְהוָה      of the wars of the LORD (Num 21:14)

Related to the passive are **stative** uses of the Niphal.

נִשְׁבְּרוּ בְּרִיחֶיהָ:      Its bars *are broken* (Jer 51:30)

**Reflexive** means that the subject acts on itself. Related to the reflexive are the **middle**, **tolerative** and **reciprocal** meanings. In the middle, the object acts by itself. In the tolerative, the subject lets the action of a verb happen to it. In the reciprocal, the subjects act together.

Reflexive:

תִּשְׁמְרוּ *you should watch over  
yourself* (Exod 23:13)

Middle:

נִפְתְּחוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם *the heavens opened*<sup>1</sup>  
(Ezek 1:1)

Tolerative:

נִדְרַשְׁתִּי לְלוֹא שְׁאֵלוֹ *I allowed myself to be  
sought by those who did  
not ask [for me]* (Isa 65:1)

Reciprocal:

וַיֹּאמֶר הָאֶסְפוּ *he said gather yourselves  
together* (Gen 49:1)

## Vocabulary

אֹר	light
אֱמֶת	trustworthiness, stability, truth
אֵף	also, even, the more so (conj)
בַּד בַּד	separation; alone, by (one)self (with –לְ)
בוֹשׁ	be ashamed
מֵרָאָה	sight, appearance
נַחַל	torrent, valley, wadi
נְחֹשֶׁת	copper, bronze
סוּס סוּסָה	horse; mare

---

<sup>1</sup> Examples of the middle in the Hebrew Bible could often also be translated as passives: “The heavens were opened.” The difference depends on whether one interprets the subject as being acted on (passive) or acting by itself (middle).

עֲבֹדָה	service
עָפָר	dry earth, dust
עָרֶב	evening
פָּנָה	turn about, turn aside
קָרָא	happen; against (inf cstr as prep)
רָדַף	pursue, persecute
שָׁבַר	break
שֶׁמֶשׁ	sun

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate the following. Chart the verbs.

(Gen 2:9) וַיִּצְמַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מִן־הָאֲדָמָה כָּל־עֵץ נִחְמָד  
לְמִרְאָה וְטוֹב לְמַאֲכָל וְעֵץ הַחַיִּים בְּתוֹךְ הָגֶן וְעֵץ הַדַּעַת  
טוֹב וְרָע:

2. Translate Genesis 2:15–25. Chart the verbs.

#### Verse 15

וַיַּנְחֶהוּ

The הוּ— on the end is a suffixed pronoun. Notice the hireq under the nun. If you wrote the full spelling with a hireq yod it might be easier to recognize the root, which is one of your vocabulary words in the last chapter.

#### Verse 17

אֲכָלָהּ

This is one of the alternate forms of the infinitive construct before a suffixed pronoun.

#### Verse 18

כִּנְגְדוֹ

Once you remove the prefixed preposition and the suffixed pronoun, you should have no trouble finding the root.

Verse 19

וַיֵּצֵר<sup>פ</sup>

This is an exception to the indicator for I-yod verbs. The root is יצר.

Verse 23

לִקְחָהּ

“she was taken” (You have not had this stem yet, but should recognize the root.)

Verse 25

יִתְבַּשְׁשׁוּ

Don’t worry about this form and its root.  
“They were ashamed.”

## Chapter 31

### Hitpael

The Hitpael **stem indicator** is an **infix**ed **tav**. Infix means that a tav is fixed inside the word. Hitpael, like Piel, has as an **indicator** the doubling of the middle root letter. (Hitpael and Piel have related meanings and forms.) As in the Piel, the middle root letter may lose the dagesh when a sheva comes under it.

#### Perfect

In the Hitpael perfect, the tav is fixed between a prefixed he<sup>3</sup> (like the Hiphil) and the three root letters.

הִתְשַׁמֵּר

The full vowel pointing of the Hitpael perfect, 3ms is:

הִתְשַׁמֵּר

#### Imperfect

The Hitpael imperfect loses the prefixed he<sup>3</sup> when adding the prefixes of the imperfect. The prefixes and suffixes are the same as for other stems and **indicate** an imperfect. The **stem indicators** remain the same as for the perfect: an infix ed tav and doubling. The 3ms form is:

יִתְשַׁמֵּר



## Imperative and Infinitive

The form of the 2ms imperative, the infinitive absolute, and the infinitive construct are the same:

הִתְשַׁמֵּר

## Participle

As in the Piel and Hiphil, the Hitpael participle prefixes a mem. The ms form is:

מִתְשַׁמֵּר

## Missing Letters and other Peculiarities

The missing letters are by now predictable. **I-vav** verbs may either return to original vav or substitute a yod and appear like I-yod verbs. No Hitpael forms of **I-yod** verbs occur in the Bible. **III-he**<sup>2</sup> may be missing or replaced by a yod or a tav. **II-gutturals** do not accept doubling (a dagesh) and may lengthen the preceding vowel.

In the Hitpael a series of other peculiarities can make it difficult to identify the root. As languages develop, the pronunciation of words changes over time. The linguistic term for one such change is **metathesis**, which means that two letters switch places. In the Hebrew Hitpael, roots that begin with one of the “s” sounds (ס ש צ), called **sibilants**, switch places with the infixed tav.

וְאֶשְׁתַּמֵּר מִעוֹנִי

*I kept myself from guilt*  
(Ps 18:24 ET 23)

The root is שִׁמֵּר. The shin and tav have changed places.

When the first root letter is ז, not only does it change places with the tav, it also causes the tav to change to a tet (ט).

וּמַה־נִּצְטַדֵּק      How can we declare ourselves  
righteous? (Gen 44:16)

The root is צדק, which is a Hitpa'el stem.

When the first root letter is ט or ט or ט, the infixed tav will assimilate. These three letters are called **dentals** because they are pronounced with the teeth (from the Latin *dens*, for tooth).

וַיִּשְׁמַע אֶת־הַקּוֹל      he heard the voice  
מִדְּבַר אֱלֹהֵי      speaking to him (Num 7:89)

The dagesh in the dalet (ד) is the assimilated tav (ט). Assimilation occurs sometimes with other dentals.

הַנְּבִאִי בִבְעַל      they prophesied by Baal  
(Jer 23:13)

The dagesh in the nun is the assimilated tav.

## Hishtaphel

וְנִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה      that we may worship  
וְנָשׁוּבָה אֵלֵיכֶם      and may return to you  
(Gen 22:5)

The first verb in the example above looks as if it might be a Hitpa'el from the root שחח "to bow." (This would be an example of shin and tav changing places, as mentioned above.) This is, in fact, the root under which BDB lists such verb forms. However, from what we have seen of other III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs, we do not expect the he<sup>3</sup> to go back to an original vav and to have another he<sup>3</sup> appear at the end (as in the verb above). Modern grammarians tend to see this as

an example of a shin-tav infix in Hebrew, either from the root חוה or חיה. The first root occurs in Ugaritic as a sheen-tav infix with the meaning “to throw oneself down (striking the earth).” The second occurs in the same stem with the meaning “to cause oneself to live (by worship).”<sup>1</sup>

### Vocabulary

בְּכֹר	בָּכָר	firstborn
	גָּדַל	be(come) strong, great; (Pi) bring up, let grow, nourish
	חָתָה*	(Hishtaphel stem) bow down
	חוֹמָה	(city) wall
	חִזְקִיָּהוּ	Hezekiah (short form: חִזְקִיָּה)
	חָמָה	heat; rage, wrath; poison
	חֲצִי	half
	חֶקֶץ	prescription, law, due, decree
	חֶשֶׁב	account, regard, value
	כֶּבֶשׂ	young ram; ewe-lamb
	כֶּבֶשֶׂה (כֶּשֶׂה)	
	כֹּחַ	strength, power
	כָּפַר*	(Pi) cover over, expiate (כִּפָּר)
	לָכַד	seize, capture
	נָגַשׁ	draw near, approach
	נָשִׂיא	prince
	עֶצֶם	bone(s)
	פָּעַם	foot(step), occurrence, time
	שָׁכַח	forget

---

<sup>1</sup> UT § 19.847.

**Exercise**

Read aloud and translate Genesis 3:1–13. Chart the verbs.

Verse 1

אָף כִּי־

“Did...?” (“Is it that...?”)

Verse 4

תִּמְחֶינָּה

The sheva under the tav makes this look like a Piel, but מוֹת does not appear in Piel (indeed, *very* few hollow verbs do), and the sheva is a vowel reduction caused by the addition of the suffix.

Verse 6

וַתֵּרָא

Normally, the tsere under the imperfect prefix is a sign of a I-vav or I-yod verb. But sometimes the loss of the third he<sup>3</sup> and the moving back of the accent causes the lengthening of the vowel under the imperfect prefix in III-he<sup>3</sup> verbs. The root is רָאָה.

Verse 7

וַיִּתְּפֶרֶן

Hint: This is not a Hitpa'el. The dagesh in the peh is weak because it is not preceded by a short vowel.

Verse 8

Notice the Hitpa'el verbs in this verse. What is the meaning of the Hitpa'el in each case?

Verse 9

אֵיכָה

The ending of this word is the long form of the 2ms suffixed pronoun, “you.” You can now look up the remaining two letters. (Why is there a dagesh in the kaph?)

Verse 11

לֹא־לֵבִיתִי

Hebrew uses this word to negate an infinitive.  
“Not to [+infinitive]”

## Chapter 32

### Hebrew Poetry

#### Parallelism

Anyone who reads the Psalms or one of the prophets will notice that the writers seem to repeat themselves. This repetition is one of the characteristics of Hebrew poetry. The balancing of thought between two lines is called parallelism.

לַיהוָה הָאָרֶץ וּמְלֹאָתָהּ	To the LORD belongs the Earth
	and its fullness,
תָּחֵל וְיֹשְׁבֵי בָהּ:	the world and those who dwell
	in it. (Ps 24:1)

Each line is called a **colon** (plural, cola). Two parallel lines are called a **bicola** and three are a **tricola**. Also used are the terms stich for one line, distich for two, and tristich for three parallel lines.

Since Bishop Robert Lowth first described Hebrew poetic parallelism, it has been traditional to speak of three types of parallelism.

**Synonymous parallelism** occurs when the second colon repeats the thought of the first colon (see above verse as an example).

**Antithetic parallelism** happens when the second colon states the opposite or contrasting thought to the first colon. The two cola are usually joined by a vav adversative translated as “but.” This type of parallelism is characteristic of Proverbs.

דֶּרֶךְ אֱוִיל יִשְׂרָאֵל	The way of a fool is right
בְּעֵינָיו	in his own eyes,

וְשֹׁמֵעַ לְעֵצָה חָכָם:

but one who listens to counsel  
is a wise person. (Prov 12:15)

**Synthetic parallelism** occurs when there is no balancing of thoughts but of word order and rhythm.

The problem with this traditional way of naming Hebrew parallelism is that verses are more often synthetic than synonymous. Recent research tends to follow two directions. The first tendency is to classify many more types of synthetic parallelism, including parallelism of word order, grammatical forms, and sound. The second tendency is to develop one definition of parallelism that includes all types, and is probably the most helpful for beginning students of Hebrew poetry. Berlin suggests that a colon may substitute for, continue, or advance, the thought of the previous colon, or both. Similarly, Kugel says that when A is the first colon and B is the second colon, then “B typically *supports* A, carries it further, backs it up, completes it, goes beyond it.” He describes the basic idea of Hebrew poetic parallelism as “A is so, *and what’s more* B is so.”

As you read Hebrew poetry, look for the many ways the subsequent lines substitute, nuance, underscore, add, specify, elaborate, expand, identify, or give examples. Look for parallels and contrasts of meaning, word order, grammatical forms, and sound. In combination, these various types of parallelism may set up complex and profound patterns of interaction.

While parallelism is perhaps the most obvious and studied feature of Hebrew poetry, it is not the only element that makes a biblical passage poetic. (Parallelism occurs also in Hebrew narrative (Gen 22:17). Some lines in Hebrew poetry show no parallelism. Meter or rhythm also creates poetry in Hebrew, as do other literary features (see below for discussion). Both Hebrew narrative and poetry may contain any of these elements. As in many cultures, prose and poetry are on a continuum. These features make a narrative text sound “poetic.” Greater and more effective concentrations of these features make a passage into poetry. The effective *concentration* of parallelism, rhythm, and literary features creates Hebrew poetry.

## **Meter or Rhythm**

For centuries scholars have claimed that biblical poetry has a meter. **Meter** is the ordering of accented and unaccented syllables according to a regular pattern.

Scholars, however, still cannot agree on what exactly Hebrew poetic meter is. There are two ways of counting meter, neither of them entirely satisfactory. Some scholars count the number of Masoretic accents in a colon, although the Masoretic vowel points and accents were added long after the text was first written. Others count the number of syllables in a colon, which involves counting not the Masoretic vowels but reconstructing the vowels of a hypothetical, earlier stage of the Hebrew language. Sometimes the vowel counts are not regular or require changes to the consonantal text to create regularity. Since neither system is entirely adequate, talk of meter in Hebrew poetry remains open to question.

The length of the cola in Hebrew poetry does often seem roughly equal. For this reason, Petersen and Richards prefer to speak of **rhythm** rather than meter. They understand rhythm as being similar to meter, but as a broader term indicating greater freedom and variation, and less clearly defined regularity. The lines of Hebrew poetry exhibit both regularity of colon length and creative variation of length that might be called rhythm.

## **Literary Features**

Literary features are those techniques that make for good literature. Like parallelism and meter they are also present in narrative. Since they have already been discussed in the chapter on Hebrew narrative, this chapter will review only a few of these features.

Discussions of Hebrew poetry sometimes mention stanzas or strophes, which can mean the same thing. Since strophe can refer specifically to a type of stanza in Greek literature, stanza as the more general term is more appropriate for discussing Hebrew poetry. A **stanza** is a unit of meaning in poetry, as a paragraph is in narrative.

Some think there are no stanzas in Hebrew. But readers will almost certainly divide a poem into units of meaning as they read.





## Chapter 33

### Other Passive Stems

So far, we have studied the Niphal, which is the passive stem corresponding to the meaning of the Qal stem. It is the most common passive stem. But there are also passive stems corresponding to the meaning of the Piel and Hiphil, as well as another passive corresponding to the Qal. These other passive stems are dealt with in this chapter. They occur only occasionally and are easy to recognize.

#### Pual

The passive stem corresponding in meaning to the Piel is the Pual. Thus Pual has the same type of meaning as the Piel but expressed as a passive—translated with a form of the verb “to be” in English.

... כִּי־כֵן צִוִּיתִי: ... for thus I have been  
commanded (Lev 8:35)

The **stem indicators** of the Pual are the doubling of the second root letter and a u-class vowel under the first root letter.

שָׁמַר

The same prefixes and suffixes identify the **perfect** and **imperfect** as in other stems. The prefix of the **participle** is the same as the Piel: –נִ. There is only one occurrence of the Pual infinite absolute and one of the infinitive construct in the Bible. The only Pual **infinitive absolute** is found in Genesis 40:15:

גָּנַב גְּנֻבְתִּי I was indeed stolen

The only Pual **infinitive construct** is in Psalm 132:1. It is from a III-he<sup>3</sup> root and has the typical הִי– ending:

עֲנוּתוֹ                      his being afflicted

As in other stems the he<sup>3</sup> is missing or replaced by a yod or tav in **III-he<sup>3</sup>** verbs.

**II-gutturals** and **resh** do not take doubling and may or may not lengthen the preceding vowel from silluq to ḥolem.

בִּרְךְ

Here is a summary of Pual verbs:

Root	Perfect	Imperfect	Participle
בִּקֵּשׁ	בִּקֵּשׁ	יִבְקֹשׁ	מִבְקֹשׁ
בִּרְךְ	בִּרְךְ	יִבְרֹךְ	מִבְרֹךְ
גִּלָּה	גִּלָּה	יִגְלֹה	מִגְלֹה

## Hophal

The Hophal is the passive stem corresponding to the Hiphil.

הֲלֹא הִגִּיד                      Has it not been told? (Isa 40:21)

The **stem indicator** of the Hophal is a u-class vowel under a prefix. The u-class vowel is normally qamets ḥatuph (ֶ), pronounced “o” and sometimes ḥolem (ֹ), but qibbuts (ֻ) for I-nun verbs and shureq (ֶ) for I-vav or I-yod and hollow verbs.

The prefix for the **perfect** is a he<sup>3</sup> as in the Hiphil.

הִשְׁמַר

The he<sup>3</sup> is lost in the imperfect and the participle, and the u-class vowel is under the prefix.

imperfect    יִשְׁמַר                      participle    מִשְׁמָר

There are only two Hophal **imperatives** in the Bible:

Root	Imperative	Translation
פנה	הִפְנוּ	Be turned back (Jer 49:8)
שכב	הִשְׁכְּבוּ	Be laid down (Ezek 32:19)

The **infinitive absolute** has a tserē under the second root letter (unlike the perfect, which has an a-class vowel).

הִשְׁמַר

The **infinitive construct** has a pataḥ under the middle root letter:

הִשְׁמֹר

The **I-vav/yod** and **hollow** verbs have shureq ( וְ ) after prefixes, as mentioned above. The **III-he**<sup>3</sup> is missing in the same places as in other stems. **I-nun** verbs show assimilation of the nun.

The table below is a summary of Hophal verb forms:

Root	Perfect	Impf.	Inf. Abs.	Inf. Cstr.	Part.
שמר	הִשְׁמַר	יִשְׁמַר	הִשְׁמֹר	הִשְׁמֹר	מִשְׁמֹר
ירד	הִוֹרַד	יִוֹרַד	הִוֹרֵד	הִוֹרֵד	מִוֹרֵד
סור	הִוִּסַר	יִוִּסַר	הִוִּסֵר	הִוִּסֵר	מִוִּסֵר
נגש	הִגַּשׁ	יִגַּשׁ	הִגַּשׁ	הִגַּשׁ	מִגַּשׁ
גלה	הִגְלָה	יִגְלָה	הִגְלֵה	הִגְלֵה	מִגְלֵה

### Qal Passive

In the history of the Hebrew language, Niphal took over the function of an earlier Qal passive. There are still some Qal passives pointed as Puals or Hophals. We know that they are Qal passives and not Puals or Hophals when the verbal root does not occur in the Piel or Hiphil, respectively, and the use has a simple Qal meaning rather than a Piel or Hiphil meaning.

BDB was written before scholars recognized the existence of the Qal passive, so BDB incorrectly lists these forms as Puals or Hophals.

Since they are pointed as Puals or Hophals, they have the same indicators. When such a verb does not occur in Piel or Hiphil and does not have a Piel or Hiphil meaning, it is a Qal Passive.

כִּי מֵאִישׁ ...	... because from a man
לְקַחְהָ-זֹאת:	was taken this one. (Gen 2:23)

The dagesh drops out when a sheva appears under it. So the pointing of the above form is like the Pual, but the root does not appear in the Piel and there is no secondary subject. Therefore, this is a Qal passive.

### Vocabulary

אָחוֹת	sister
אָמֵן*	(Ni) be firm, reliable, trustworthy; (Hi) trust, believe
בָּטַח	trust
בָּכָה	weep
יָדָה*	(Pi) throw, cast; (Hi, Hitp) thank, praise, confess
יָטַב	be good
יָשָׁר	straight, right, upright (adj)
כָּבֵד	be heavy, honored
לָבַשׁ	put on, clothe
נֶגֶב	south, Negev; the dry country
נָחַם*	(Ni) be sorry, repent; (Pi) comfort, console
פֶּן-	lest (conj)
קָבַץ	assemble

קָבַר	bury
קָהַל	assembly, congregation
שָׁאַר	remain; (Ni, Hi) be left over
שָׁכַן	tent, dwell, settle (verb)
שָׁלַךְ*	(Hi) throw, cast

### Exercises

1. Read and translate Genesis 3:14–24. Chart the verbs.

2. If you would like additional practice identifying passive stems, translate the following and chart the verbs.

(Num 36:2) וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֶת־אֲדֹנֵי צוּהַ יְהוָה לִתֵּן אֶת־הָאָרֶץ בְּנַחֲלָה  
בְּנוֹרָל לְבָנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל<sup>a</sup> וְאֲדֹנֵי צוּהַ בִּיהוָה<sup>a</sup> לִתֵּן אֶת־נַחֲלַת צִלְפַּחַד  
אֶחָיו לְבָנָתָיו:  
(ו' צוּהַ בָּשֵׁם י' וְאֶתְנוּ צוּהַ י' <sup>a-a</sup> prp)

(Lev 6:23 ET 30) וְכָל־חֲטָאֵת אֲשֶׁר<sup>p</sup> יֹבֵא<sup>a</sup> מִדְּמָה אֶל־אֹהֶל  
מוֹעֵד לְכַפֵּר בַּקֹּדֶשׁ לֹא תֹאכְלֵהּ בָּאֵשׁ תִּשְׂרֹף:  
(יבוא <sup>a</sup> w)

(Gen 45:19) וְאַתָּה צוֹיִתָּה<sup>a</sup> זֹאת עֲשׂוּ קְחוּ־לָכֶם מֵאָרֶץ  
מִצְרַיִם עֲגִלוֹת לְטַפְכֶּם וְלִנְשִׁיכֶם וּנְשֵׁאתֶם אֶת־אֲבִיכֶם וּבָאתֶם:  
(ט? צוּהַ אִתֶּם<sup>a</sup> cf 5)

(Judg 6:28) וַיִּשְׁכְּמוּ אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר בַּבֹּקֶר וַהֲנִה נֹתֵן מִזְבֵּחַ הַפֶּעַל  
וְהָאִשְׁרָה אֲשֶׁר־עָלָיו כֹּרְתָהּ וְאֵת הַפָּר הַשְּׂנִי<sup>a</sup> הֶעֱלָה עַל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ  
הַבְּנוּי:  
(cf 5<sup>a-a</sup> et 25<sup>a</sup> הַשְּׂנִי<sup>a</sup> 1)

## Chapter 34

### Geminate Verbs

The name geminate is related to the word *Gemini*, or “twins.” Geminate verbs have the same last two root letters, as in סבב “go around.” When you are reading Hebrew, the **indicator** of a geminate root is the same last two root letters (סָבָבּוּ), often represented by a strong dagesh (תָּמַוּ) from the root תָּמַם).

#### Qal Stem

In the **perfect**, a second **indicator** of a geminate verb is a ḥolem vav before suffixes beginning with a consonant (סָבָוּת). Only the third masculine singular of one type of geminate verb (תָּמַ) lacks the two indicators above. This form is similar to the Qal perfect 3 ms of a hollow verb (שָׁב), but has a pataḥ rather than a qamets. The table below illustrates the two types of geminate verbs in the Qal perfect.

PGN	Type I (Example: סבב)		Type II (Example: תָּמַם)	
3ms	סָבָבּ	he went around	תָּמַ	he was complete
3fs	סָבָבָהּ	she went around	תָּמָהּ	she was complete
2ms	סָבָבְתָּ	you went around	תָּמַוְתָּ	you were complete
2fs	סָבָבְתְּ	you went around	תָּמַוְתְּ	you were complete
1cs	סָבָבְתִּי	I went around	תָּמַוְתִּי	I was complete
3cp	סָבָבּוּ	they went around	תָּמַוּ	they were complete
2mp	סָבָבְתֶּם	you went around	תָּמַוְתֶּם	you were complete
2fp	סָבָבְתֶּן	you went around	תָּמַוְתֶּן	you were complete
1cp	סָבָבּוּנִי	we went around	תָּמַוּנוּ	we were complete

Type II, seen in the example, usually has a stative meaning.

When the second and third root consonants are gutturals or resh, which do not accept doubling, the preceding vowel is lengthened, as in רָעוּ “they are broken” (Jer 11:16) from רָעַע.

In the Qal **imperfect**, Type I geminate verbs have the appearance and indicators of hollow or I-nun roots. Type II geminate verbs look like I-vav verbs in the imperfect. As you can see from the table below, some forms have the strong dagesh indicating a geminate root, but many have only the indicators of hollow, I-nun, or I-vav roots respectively.

	Type I		Type II
PGN	Like hollow	Like I-nun	Like I-vav
3ms	יָסַב	יָסַב	יָתַם
3fs	תָּסַב	תָּסַב	תָּתַם
2ms	תָּסַב	תָּסַב	תָּתַם
2fs	תָּסַבִּי	תָּסַבִּי	תָּתַמִּי
1cs	אָסַב	אָסַב	אָתַם
3mp	יָסְבוּ	יָסְבוּ	יָתְמוּ
3fp	תָּסַבְינָה	תָּסַבְנָה	תָּתַמְינָה
2mp	תָּסְבוּ	תָּסְבוּ	תָּתְמוּ
2fp	תָּסַבְינָה	תָּסַבְנָה	תָּתַמְינָה
1cp	נָסַב	נָסַב	נָתַם

The Qal **imperatives** remove the prefix of the imperfect. They are, therefore, either סַב סַבְי סַבְנָה or תַּם תַּמְי תַּמְנָה.

The Qal **infinitive absolute** is סָבֹב. The **infinitive construct** is סָב and with suffixes סַבְי.

The Qal **active participle** is סַבֵּב or תַּם.

The Qal **passive participle** is regular: סָבִיב.



### Hiphil and Niphal

Geminate verbs in the Hiphil and Niphal stems continue the mixture of indicators unique to geminates and shared with missing-letter verb roots. The table below summarizes the features of geminates in these stems.

Conjugation	Niphal	Hiphil
<u>Perfect</u>		
3ms	נָסַב	הִסֵּב
2ms	נִסְבֹּתָ	הִסְבֹּתָ
<u>Imperfect</u>		
3ms	יִסֵּב	יְסִיב
2fs	תִּסְבִּי	תְּסִיבִי
<u>Imperative</u>		
2ms	הִסֵּב	הִסֵּב
2fs	הִסְבִּי	הִסְבִּי
<u>Participle</u>		
ms	נֹסֵב	מְסִיב
fs	נֹסְבָה	מְסִיבָה
<u>Infinitive</u>		
Construct	הִסְבֹּב	הִסֵּב
Absolute	הִסֵּב	הִסֵּב

Not only do geminate verbs have the form and indicators of other missing-letter verb roots, but for some roots the lexicons list hollow or III-heʿ roots with the same range of meaning. Examples are פִּיר פָּרַר “break out” and רַבָּה רָבַב “be numerous.”

The best advice for the beginner is to remember the **indicators** of the geminate: the ך and the dagesh in the second letter. Some forms are missing these indicators. When the indicators suggest a III-he, a II-vav/yod, I-nun, or I-vav verb, but

you cannot find the root, or the meaning does not make sense in the context, it may be a geminate.

### Other Stems

Geminate verbs appear in the Piel, Pual, and Hitpael stems, but sometimes in the **Pilpel**, **Polpal**, and **Hitpolel** with similar meanings. The repetition of the two letters makes these stems easy to identify.

Root <sup>1</sup>	Pilpel	Polpal	Hitpalel
קלל	קללֵל	קללֵל	הִתְקַלֵּל

Some **II-vav/yod** verbs also take these stems. Note that these will be listed in BDB as II-vav/yod verbs, but will show repetition of the first and third root letters in these stems.

The **hollow** verbs occur most often in the Piel, Pual, and Hitpael stems, but also frequently with the same meanings in the **Polel**, **Polal**, and **Hitpolel** stems respectively.

Root <sup>2</sup>	Polel	Polal	Hitpolel
קום	קוּמֵם	קוּמֵם	הִתְקוּמֵם

### Vocabulary

חָלַל*	(Ni) be defiled; (Pi) pollute, profane; (Hi) begin
יָתַר*	(Ni, Hi) be left, remain
לְקַרְאֵת	over against, opposite (inf. cstr. used as a prep.)
לָשׁוֹן	tongue
מִגְרֵשׁ	pasture; produce
מַמְלָכָה	kingdom

<sup>1</sup> These stems seldom occur, so no verb root actually appears in all three stems.

<sup>2</sup> These stems seldom occur, so no verb root actually appears in all three stems.

נָבֵא*	(Ni, Hitp) prophesy
נָהָר	river
עֲמֹד	pillar, column
פֶּרִי	fruit
צֶדֶק	righteousness, what is just
קָדוֹשׁ	holy
קָטַר*	(Pi) send (an offering) up in smoke; (Hi) make smoke
רֶכֶב	chariot
שָׂרַף	burn
שָׁלֵם	be whole, complete; (Pi) repay; (Hi) make peace with
שָׁמְרוֹן	Samaria

### Exercises

1. Read aloud and translate Lamentations 1:18–22. Chart the verbs. Most translations understand the first verb in verse 18 as being from the root מָרָה. Could it be from the root מָרַר? How would this change what Jerusalem is saying?

### Verse 19

לָמוֹ This is a rare pronoun suffix attached to the preposition לְ. See page 43. For other explanations, see BDB page 555 under מוֹ and page 510 under לְ.

2. If you would like additional practice identifying geminate stems, translate the following and chart the verbs.

(Ezra 3:6) מִיּוֹם אֶחָד לַחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁבִיעִי הֵחֵלוּ לְהַעֲלוֹת עֹלוֹת  
לַיהוָה וְהִיכֵל יְהוָה לֹא יָסַד:

(Hos 7:2) וּבִלְיָאֲמָרוֹ לְלִבְכֶּם כָּל־רָעָתָם זָכַרְתִּי עֲתָה סִבְבוּם  
מִעֲלֵיהֶם נִגַּד פָּנַי הָיוּ:  
(פִּי־prp<sup>a</sup>)

(1 Kings 1:2) וַיֹּאמְרוּ לוֹ עֲבָדָיו יִבְקֹשׁוּ לְאֹדֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ נַעֲרָה  
בְּתוּלָה וְעַמּוּדָה לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְתִהְיֶה־לוֹ סִכָּנָה וְשִׁכְבָּה בְּחִיקָךְ  
וְחָם לְאֹדֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ:

(Joel 2:26) יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר־עָשָׂה עִמָּכֶם לְהַפְּלִיא  
וְלֹא־יִבְשׁוּ עַמִּי לְעוֹלָם:

## Chapter 35

### Oaths

An introductory textbook only explains the most common rules of grammar and syntax. When reading the Hebrew Bible you will encounter exceptions and variations to these rules. Therefore, it is important to know how to consult more lengthy and detailed reference grammars.

#### Reference Grammars

The standard reference grammars in English are *Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar*, edited by Kautzsch and translated by Cowley, and Joüon's *Grammar of Biblical Hebrew*, translated and revised by Muraoka. They are commonly referred to by the abbreviations GKC and Joüon. Although called *An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax*, Waltke and O'Connor's book is actually an intermediate textbook that can be used as a reference grammar. It has many useful examples and references to current research and is typically abbreviated as *IBHS*.

The easiest way to consult reference grammars is to use the index of biblical passages or the index of Hebrew words and forms. For example, if you are studying a passage, you can look it up in the index of biblical passages. If the passage you are studying has unusual or difficult forms or constructions, you may find a discussion of it in a reference grammar.

Suppose you had difficulty translating the infinitive construct in the last exercise of the previous chapter (Joel 2:26). In the "Index of Passages" in GKC, beside Joel 2:26 is §114 o. Typically, reference grammars refer you to the section ( § ). This leads you to the section of the page where there is a reference to Joel 2:26 and can help you understand the relationship of the comment to the broader discussion. If you turn to §114 o, you will notice by the heading on the page or by turning back several pages to the title

that section 114 is about uses of the infinitive construct. Subsection o discusses the infinitive construct with lamed as “frequently used in a much looser connexion [sic] . . . to define more exactly.” In the case of Joel 2:26, the infinitive construct with lamed (לְהַפְּלִיא) “wondrously”) defines more closely how God “has dealt.” Thus this reference grammar explains that the infinitive construct with lamed used in this way is fairly common in Biblical Hebrew and discusses its meaning.

## Curses

You might have to look up curses and oaths in a reference grammar because they are difficult to understand and sometimes not discussed in introductory textbooks. They seem counter intuitive because אִם can be translated “surely not” and אִם-לֹא “surely.” Most difficult to translate are certain oaths that only make sense in English if translated this way. We begin with curses because they can be translated literally with “if” for אִם and “if not” for אִם-לֹא although we can also understand how they could be translated אִם “surely not” and אִם-לֹא “surely.”

Examine, for example, the following common curses:

כֹּה-יַעֲשֶׂה-לִּי אֱלֹהִים	Thus may God do to me
וְכֹה יוֹסֵף	and add more
אִם-יַעֲמֹד רֹאשׁ	if stands the head of Elisha son of
אֵלִישָׁע בֶּן-שַׁפָּט	Shaphat (= <i>it will surely not</i> )
עָלָיו הַיּוֹם:	on him today. (2 Kgs 6:31)

כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה-לִּי אֱלֹהִים	Thus may God do to me
וְכֹה יוֹסֵף	and add more
אִם-לֹא	if you do not (= <i>surely you will</i> )
שָׂר־צְבָא תִּהְיֶה	become army commander
	(2 Sam 19:14)

The typical curse, therefore, begins with:

כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה-לִי אֱלֹהִים וְכֹה יוֹסִיף

and ends with a statement that begins with **אִם** or **אִם-לֹא** or occasionally by **כִּי** translated “surely.”

Joüon thinks that “thus” indicates a self-curse that goes unexpressed but, as he suggests, may be indicated by a gesture, such as passing the hand across the throat (§165 a). Reuben’s promise to bring Jacob’s son Benjamin back from Egypt may provide an example of such a self-curse being expressed.

אֶת-שְׁנֵי בָנַי תָּמִית	My two sons may you kill,
אִם-לֹא אָבִיאֵנִי אֵלֶיךָ	if I do not bring him to you.
	(Gen 42:37)

In this kind of statement, if the first part, “my two sons may you kill,” began to go unexpressed because it was so shocking, then in the second half **אִם-לֹא** would be translated in a way similar to many oaths: “Surely, I will bring him to you.”

### Oaths

Oaths typically begin with either the verb **נִשְׁבַּע** “swear,” or with **חַי** (or **חַיִּי**) + name “by the life of,” or with both.

נִשְׁבַּע אֲדֹנָי יְהוָה	The Lord God swears . . .
	(Amos 4:2)

חַי־יְהוָה	As the LORD lives . . .
	(2 Sam 12:5)

These introductions are followed by statements beginning with **כִּי** or **אִם-לֹא** “surely,” or **אִם** “surely not.” These are easy enough to translate when they begin with **כִּי** “surely.”

חַי־יְהוָה כִּי בֶן-מָוֶת הָאִישׁ הָעֹשֶׂה זֹאת:	As the LORD lives, surely the man who did this is a dead man. (2 Sam 12:5)
---	--

They are more complicated when the statements begin with אִם-לֹא or אִם or אִם כִּי “surely” or אִם “surely not.”

נִשְׁבַּע יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת לֵאמֹר אִם-לֹא כַאֲשֶׁר דִּמְיִתִּי כֵּן הִיְתָה	The LORD of Hosts has sworn: “Surely, as I designed, thus shall it be. (Isa 14:24)
--	--

חַי־יְהוָה כִּי אִם-יְהוָה יִנָּפֶנּוּ	As the LORD lives, surely the LORD will strike him.
---	--

חַי פַּרְעֹה אִם-תִּצְאוּ מִזֶּה	As Pharaoh lives, you shall surely not leave here. (Gen 42:15)
-------------------------------------	--

וַיִּשְׁבַּע שָׁאוּל חַי־יְהוָה אִם-יִוָּמָת:	Saul swore, “As the LORD lives, he shall surely not be put to death.” (1 Sam 19:6)
---	---

According to GKC, the common explanation for the use of אִם and אִם-לֹא in oaths is that oaths suppress a self-curse (§149 b). For example, we would understand 1 Samuel 19:6 above as, “As the LORD lives, [may something terrible happen to me] if he is put to death,” which is equivalent to “he shall surely not be put to death.” GKC admits a self-curse is difficult to understand when put in the mouth of God, but suggests the origin of the construction may have been forgotten (§149 b). Joüon thinks they are better explained as the result of contamination from curses and vice-versa



(§165 g–h). However, *IBHS* thinks the reasons behind these constructions may be lost to us (§ 40.2.2 a).

In this manner, reference grammars may help you identify and understand unusual forms and constructions.

### Vocabulary

בְּלֹאִי	non-existence (noun); not (adv); except (prep)
בִּמְה	high place
בְּעַד	away from, behind, through, for (the benefit of) (prep)
גָּאַל	redeem
גִּלְעָדִי	Gilead (גִּלְעָדִי “Gileadites”)
חֻקָּה	statute, prescription
יֶרֶבֹּעַם	Jeroboam
שָׁפַךְ	pour out
שָׁקַר	lie, deception, falsehood
תּוֹעֵבָה	abomination
תָּמִיד	continuance (noun); continually, regularly (adv)

### Exercise

Read aloud and translate Ruth 1:6–18. Chart the verbs.

## **Chapter 36**

### **Overview of Interpretation**

This chapter integrates the exegetical methods introduced throughout this book into a method of interpretation. For one of my professors, who was opposed to such outlines of the steps in exegesis, exegesis was not a plodding, systematic method but rather a creative dance. Moreover, different texts required different methods. A one-size-fits-all method could not accommodate the diversity of literature in the Bible. In a postmodern context, I am aware that methods are problematic because of the power dynamics they assume and conceal.

In my experience, however, such a list of exegetical questions and methods that can typically be applied to a passage is much appreciated by students. Not all of the following questions and methods will apply equally to every text or appeal equally to every reader. Furthermore, an interpreter seldom proceeds through the list in a straight line. Rather, questions and insights arise in reading that will cause him or her to revisit a question or method.

Although the following list is not exhaustive, it may seem overwhelming to a beginner. Further questions can be asked and methods applied to find meaning in texts. In the beginning, following all the suggestions may seem too time-consuming and difficult but, with practice, they become easier. As a reader you may discover you favor certain methods and begin to recognize which of them will be most productive for a particular text. Biblical scholars, for example, have found genre criticism particularly useful for the book of Psalms.

Interpretation in biblical studies is in the midst of a paradigm shift. In Chapter 4, I defined exegesis as the methods of historical and literary analysis of a passage that “lead out” meaning. Some readers may have noticed that I did not use the definite article.

Traditionally, exegesis has been defined as determining *the* meaning of a passage. This was based on a modern, nineteenth-century, liberal theory of interpretation that defined the meaning of a text as the meaning intended by the author. Identifying the author and understanding the historical context was essential to understanding the intended meaning. There might be disagreement over the author's intention and differences about how to apply the meaning, but it was assumed that the meaning of a work was the one intended by the author and agreed that the appropriate methods were historical-critical. Over time, this historical-critical method came to dominate in academic, biblical studies.

In literary criticism, however, the focus of interpretation shifted in the twentieth-century from the author to the text and finally to the reader. A growing number of biblical scholars are using newer literary methods oriented toward the text and the reader. From another perspective, an increasing number of liberation, feminist, and post-colonial interpreters in biblical studies also shift the focus toward the experience of the reader as an essential element of interpretation. Some of the exegetical methods presented in this book were historical-critical—source, redaction, genre, and tradition criticism. Other methods were text-oriented—narrative, poetry, and rhetorical criticism. This chapter integrates author- and text-oriented methods with a focus on the reader, influenced by feminist and post-colonial interpretation.

### **Locating the Readers**

What interpretations of this passage have you heard? What are your immediate reactions?

How do your experience, gender, culture, religion, class, and geographical location influence the way you read this passage? How might people from different cultures, social locations, and experiences, read this passage?

What causes systematic oppression in your context? (Sexism? Racism? Capitalism? Colonialism? Ageism? . . . )

As your study progresses, look for ways these relate to the passage you are studying.

## **Text**

Set the limits of the passage you will study. This involves thinking about what verse(s) can be considered a self-contained unit and why.

Read the textual apparatus of *BHS*. Are there variant readings that affect the meaning? Using the principles of text criticism establish the best text(s). Write down your reasons for choosing a particular reading.

See what the grammar and word order communicate. Note the usage of stems and their meaning. Do word studies of key words using *BDB*, concordances, *TDOT*, and *TDNT*.

Make your own translations of the passage: one literal and one dynamic. Read a variety of translations as you look for differences in meaning that may come from different readings or translations of the Hebrew.

## **Literary Analysis**

Make copies of your passage. Mark up the copies, making charts or outlines in order to note narrative features such as repetition, chiasmus, key words, emphasis, climax, and mood.

Think about the events, plot, characters, and settings.

What is the genre? Compare your passage to other passages of the same genre in the Hebrew Bible and Ancient Near East.

Study the place of your passage in the chapter and book.

How do the passage and larger literary setting illumine each other? Consider the context of the canon, place of the passage in the canon, and relation to the other parts of the canon.

## **Historical, Social, and Cultural Analysis**

Who wrote the passage? Is there evidence of different sources or redaction?

What is the historical situation?

What is the setting in life of the genre?

What is the history of the tradition(s)?

Do any cultural practices in the passage require further research?

What are the social positions of the characters in the passage, of the author, and of the audience?

What would the ideological functions of the passage have been in its historical context and in the history of interpretation?

What is the history of the interpretation of the passage?

### **Engagement**

How does your experience contribute to your interpretation? How might someone with a different experience and social location interpret the passage?

Can you read yourself into the story? With whom do you identify? How would it change the meaning to identify with a different character?

What is the theology of the passage? What are the images of God in the passage? What does God say or do?

Which historical, cultural, or social realities in the passage can you put into conversation with contemporary society?

### **Evaluation**

The many features of a passage lend themselves to various interpretations. But some interpretations are better than others. Some are liberating, whereas others, often unintentionally, oppress or harm the world. Better interpretations account for more features of the text, have richer possibilities of meaning for many people, and are open to reflection and action.

### **Exercise**

In the English-speaking world Psalm 23 has become a cultural icon, even for those with little or no faith. In fact, this was not always the case. Until modern times it was not so widely known and used. Why has it become so popular? What was its original meaning? Read Psalm 23 in Hebrew and use the questions in this chapter to help find the answers.

After answering as many questions as you can on your own, consult the standard critical commentaries. Particularly useful for the history of interpretation is William Holladay's "The Lord is My Shepherd: Then and Now," and "How the Twenty-third Psalm

Became an American Secular Icon.”<sup>1</sup> For Latin American, Asian, and African perspectives on Psalm 23 see the chapters by Croatto, Kinoti, and Moon in *Return to Babel: Global Perspectives on the Bible*.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Psalms through Three Thousand Years* (Minneapolis: Fortress, 1989), 6–14, 359–371.

<sup>2</sup> Priscilla Pope-Levison and John R. Levison, eds. (Louisville: Westminster/John Knox, 1999), 57–72.



**Appendix A**  
**Verb Chart Worksheets**

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features



Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

Root	Stem	Conjugation	PGN	Special Features

## Appendix B

### Stem and Conjugation Indicators

Stem	Perf.	Impf.	Impv.	Ptc.	Inf. Abs.	Inf. Cstr.
Qal	שָׁמַר	יִשְׁמַר	שִׁמֹּר	שֹׁמֵר	שָׁמֹר	שֹׁמֵר
Ni.	נִשְׁמַר	יִשְׁמָר	הִשְׁמַר	נִשְׁמָר	נִשְׁמֹר הִשְׁמֹר	הִשְׁמָר
Pi.	שֻׁמַּר	יִשְׁמַרְךָ	שִׁמְרֵךָ	מְשֻׁמָּר		שֻׁמָּר
Pu.	שֻׁמַּר	יִשְׁמַרְךָ		מְשֻׁמָּר		
Hit.	הִתְשַׁמַּר	יִתְשַׁמַּר	הִתְשַׁמְּרִי	מִתְשַׁמֵּר	הִתְשַׁמֹּר	הִתְשַׁמֵּר
Hi.	הִשְׁמִיר	יִשְׁמִירְךָ	הִשְׁמִירְךָ	מִשְׁמִיר		הִשְׁמִיר הִשְׁמִיר
Ho.	הִשְׁמִיר	יִשְׁמִירְךָ		מִשְׁמִיר	הִשְׁמִיר	



## **Appendix C**

### **Verb Charts**

With the exception of the first one, the design of each verb chart corresponds to the internal organization of the chapters in this book. The first verb chart shows the forms of the stems on a strong verb. The other verb charts display strong and weak verbs in columns under a stem and its conjugations, just as the chapters present the strong and weak verbs together under a stem and conjugation. The reader can thereby track, on one chart, the indicators of a stem, conjugation, and weak roots presented in the corresponding chapter.

The charts use roots that appear in the Hebrew Bible in those particular stems and conjugations, though not all the forms in each column are attested.

Strong Verb		Qal (שׁמר)	Niphal (נִשְׁמַר)	Piel (שִׁמַּר)	Pual (שְׁמוּר)
Perf.	3ms	שָׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר	שִׁמַּר	שְׁמוּר
	3fs	שָׁמְרָה	נִשְׁמְרָה	שִׁמְרָה	שְׁמוּרָה
	2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	נִשְׁמַרְתָּ	שִׁמַּרְתָּ	שְׁמוּרְתָּ
	2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	נִשְׁמַרְתְּ	שִׁמַּרְתְּ	שְׁמוּרְתְּ
	1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	נִשְׁמַרְתִּי	שִׁמַּרְתִּי	שְׁמוּרְתִּי
	3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	נִשְׁמְרוּ	שִׁמְרוּ	שְׁמוּרוּ
	2mp	שָׁמַרְתֶּם	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	שִׁמַּרְתֶּם	שְׁמוּרְתֶּם
	2fp	שָׁמַרְתֶּן	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	שִׁמַּרְתֶּן	שְׁמוּרְתֶּן
	1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	נִשְׁמַרְנוּ	שִׁמַּרְנוּ	שְׁמוּרְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִשְׁמַר	יִשְׁמַר	יִשְׁמַר	יִשְׁמַר
	3fs	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר
	2ms	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּשְׁמַר
	2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשְׁמְרִי
	1cs	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶשְׁמַר
	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשְׁמְרוּ
	3fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה
	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשְׁמְרוּ
	2fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה
	1cp	נִשְׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר
Impv.	2ms	שָׁמַר	הִשְׁמַר	שִׁמַּר	not attested
	2fs	שָׁמְרִי	הִשְׁמְרִי	שִׁמְרִי	
	2mp	שָׁמְרוּ	הִשְׁמְרוּ	שִׁמְרוּ	
	2fp	שָׁמַרְנָה	הִשְׁמַרְנָה	שִׁמַּרְנָה	
Inf.	Abs.	שָׁמוֹר	נִשְׁמוֹר / הִשְׁמוֹר	שָׁמוֹר / שִׁמוֹר	שָׁמוֹר
	Cstr.	שָׁמוֹר	הִשְׁמוֹר	שָׁמוֹר	
Part.	Act.	שֹׁמֵר		מְשַׁמֵּר	
	Pass.	שְׁמוּר	נִשְׁמוּר		מְשֻׁמָּר
Vav consec.		וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּשְׁמַר

		Hitpael (קדש)	Hiphil (קרב)	Hophal (פקד)
Perf.	3ms	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִקְרִיב	הִפְקֵד
	3fs	הִתְקַדְּשָׁה	הִקְרִיבָהּ	הִפְקִידָהּ
	2ms	הִתְקַדְּשָׁתָּ	הִקְרַבְתָּ	הִפְקַדְתָּ
	2fs	הִתְקַדְּשָׁתְּ	הִקְרַבְתְּ	הִפְקַדְתְּ
	1cs	הִתְקַדַּשְׁתִּי	הִקְרַבְתִּי	הִפְקַדְתִּי
	3cp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִקְרִיבוּ	הִפְקִדוּ
	2mp	הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתֶם	הִקְרַבְתֶּם	הִפְקַדְתֶּם
	2fp	הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתֶן	הִקְרַבְתֶּן	הִפְקַדְתֶּן
	1cp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִקְרַבְנוּ	הִפְקַדְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִתְקַדֵּשׁ	יִקְרִיב	יִפְקֵד
	3fs	תִּתְקַדֵּשׁ	תִּקְרִיב	תִּפְקֵד
	2ms	תִּתְקַדֵּשׁ	תִּקְרִיב	תִּפְקֵד
	2fs	תִּתְקַדְּשִׁי	תִּקְרִיבִי	תִּפְקְדִי
	1cs	אֶתְקַדֵּשׁ	אֶקְרִיב	אֶפְקֵד
	3mp	יִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	יִקְרִיבוּ	יִפְקִדוּ
	3fp	תִּתְקַדְּשֶׁנָּה	תִּקְרַבְנָהּ	תִּפְקִדְנָהּ
	2mp	תִּתְקַדְּשׁוּ	תִּקְרִיבוּ	תִּפְקִדוּ
	2fp	תִּתְקַדְּשֶׁנָּה	תִּקְרַבְנָהּ	תִּפְקִדְנָהּ
	1cp	נִתְקַדֵּשׁ	נִקְרִיב	נִפְקֵד
Impv.	2ms	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִקְרַב	
	2fs	הִתְקַדְּשִׁי	הִקְרִיבִי	
	2mp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִקְרִיבוּ	
	2fp	הִתְקַדְּשֶׁנָּה	הִקְרַבְנָהּ	
Inf.	Abs.	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִקְרַב	הִפְקֵד
	Cstr.	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִקְרִיב	הִפְקֵד
Part.	Act.	מִתְקַדֵּשׁ	מִקְרִיב	
	Pass.			מִפְקֵד
Vav consec.		וַיִּתְקַדֵּשׁ	וַיִּקְרַב	וַיִּפְקֵד

Qal		Strong (שָׁמַר)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גָּלַה)	III-gutt. (שָׁלַח)	III- <sup>2</sup> aleph (מָצָא)	II-vav (קָוַם)
Perf.	3ms	שָׁמַר	גָּלַה	שָׁלַח	מָצָא	קָם
	3fs	שָׁמְרָה	גָּלְתָה	שָׁלְחָה	מָצְאָה	קָמָה
	2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	גָּלִיתָ	שָׁלַחְתָּ	מָצַאְתָּ	קָמַתָּ
	2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	גָּלִיתְ	שָׁלַחְתְּ	מָצַאְתְּ	קָמַתְּ
	1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	גָּלִיתִי	שָׁלַחְתִּי	מָצַאְתִּי	קָמַתִּי
	3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	גָּלוּ	שָׁלְחוּ	מָצְאוּ	קָמוּ
	2mp	שָׁמַרְתֶּם	גָּלִיתֶם	שָׁלַחְתֶּם	מָצַאְתֶּם	קָמַתֶּם
	2fp	שָׁמַרְתֶּן	גָּלִיתֶן	שָׁלַחְתֶּן	מָצַאְתֶּן	קָמַתֶּן
	1cp	שָׁמְרוּ	גָּלִינוּ	שָׁלַחְנוּ	מָצַאְנוּ	קָמְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִשְׁמַר	יִגְלֶה	יִשְׁלַח	יִמְצֹא	יִקְוֶם
	3fs	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגְלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְצֹא	תִּקְוֶם
	2ms	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגְלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְצֹא	תִּקְוֶם
	2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּגְלִי	תִּשְׁלְחִי	תִּמְצְאִי	תִּקְוִמִי
	1cs	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶגְלֶה	אֶשְׁלַח	אֶמְצֹא	אֶקְוֶם
	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִגְלוּ	יִשְׁלְחוּ	יִמְצְאוּ	יִקְוְמוּ
	3fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצְאֵנָה	תִּקְוִמֵּינָה
	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּגְלוּ	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּקְוְמוּ
	2fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצְאֵנָה	תִּקְוִמֵּינָה
	1cp	נִשְׁמַר	נִגְלֶה	נִשְׁלַח	נִמְצֹא	נִקְוֶם
Impv.	2ms	שָׁמַר	גָּלַה	שָׁלַח	מָצָא	קָוַם
	2fs	שָׁמְרִי	גָּלִי	שָׁלְחִי	מָצְאִי	קָוַמִי
	2mp	שָׁמְרוּ	גָּלוּ	שָׁלְחוּ	מָצְאוּ	קָוְמוּ
	2fp	שָׁמַרְנָה	גָּלִינָה	שָׁלַחְנָה	מָצְאֵנָה	קָוְמֵנָה
Inf.	Abs.	שָׁמֹר	גָּלוּה	שָׁלוּחַ	מָצֹוא	קָוֶם
	Cstr.	שָׁמֹר	גָּלוּת	שָׁלַחַ	מָצָא	קָוֶם
Part.	Act.	שָׁמֵר	גָּלֶה	שָׁלַחַ	מָצֵא	קָם
	Pass.	שָׁמוֹר	גָּלוּי	שָׁלוּחַ	מָצֹוא	קָוֶם
Vav consec.		וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּגְלַל	וַיִּשְׁלַח	וַיִּמְצֹא	וַיִּקְם

II-gutt. (גאל)	I-nun (ננש נפל נתן)			I-vav (יִשב)	I-yod (יִטב)	I-gutt. (עמד)
גֵּאַל	נִנְשׁ	נִפְל	נָתַן	יִשֵּׁב	יִטֵּב	עָמַד
גֵּאַלָּה	נִנְשָׁה	נִפְלָה	נָתְנָה	יִשְׁבָּה	יִטְבָּה	עָמְדָה
גֵּאַלָּת	נִנְשֶׁת	נִפְלָת	נָתַתְּ	יִשְׁבֶּת	יִטְבֶּת	עָמַדְתְּ
גֵּאַלָּת	נִנְשֶׁת	נִפְלָת	נָתַתְּ	יִשְׁבֶּת	יִטְבֶּת	עָמַדְתְּ
גֵּאַלָּתִי	נִנְשִׁיתִי	נִפְלָתִי	נָתַתִּי	יִשְׁבֹּתִי	יִטְבֹּתִי	עָמַדְתִּי
גֵּאַלּוּ	נִנְשׁוּ	נִפְלוּ	נָתְנוּ	יִשְׁבוּ	יִטְבוּ	עָמְדוּ
גֵּאַלָּתֶם	נִנְשֶׁתֶם	נִפְלָתֶם	נָתַתֶּם	יִשְׁבֻּתֶם	יִטְבֻּתֶם	עָמַדְתֶּם
גֵּאַלָּתְּךָ	נִנְשֶׁתְּךָ	נִפְלָתְךָ	נָתַתְּךָ	יִשְׁבֻּתְךָ	יִטְבֻּתְךָ	עָמַדְתְּךָ
גֵּאַלָּנוּ	נִנְשֻׁנוּ	נִפְלָנוּ	נָתְנוּ	יִשְׁבֻּנוּ	יִטְבֻּנוּ	עָמַדְנוּ
יִגֵּאַל	יִנְשׁ	יִפְל	יָתַן	יִשֵּׁב	יִיטֵב	יַעֲמֹד
יִתְגֵּאַל	יִתְנֵשׁ	יִתְפֹּל	יִתֵּן	יִתְשֵׁב	יִתְיטֵב	יִתְעַמֵּד
יִתְגֵּאַל	יִתְנֵשׁ	יִתְפֹּל	יִתֵּן	יִתְשֵׁב	יִתְיטֵב	יִתְעַמֵּד
יִתְגֵּאַלִּי	יִתְנִשִּׁי	יִתְפֹּלִי	יִתְּנִי	יִתְשִׁבִי	יִתְיטִבִי	יִתְעַמְּדִי
אִגֵּאַל	אִנְשׁ	אִפְל	אָתַן	אִשֵּׁב	אִיטֵב	אֵעַמֵּד
יִגֵּאַלּוּ	יִנְשׁוּ	יִפְלוּ	יָתְנוּ	יִשְׁבוּ	יִיטְבוּ	יַעֲמְדוּ
יִתְגֵּאַלְנָה	יִתְנִשְׁנָה	יִתְפֹּלְנָה	יִתְּנָה	יִתְשִׁבְנָה	יִתְיטְבְּנָה	יִתְעַמְּדְנָה
יִתְגֵּאַלּוּ	יִתְנִשׁוּ	יִתְפֹּלוּ	יִתְּנוּ	יִתְשִׁבוּ	יִתְיטְבוּ	יִתְעַמְּדוּ
יִתְגֵּאַלְנָה	יִתְנִשְׁנָה	יִתְפֹּלְנָה	יִתְּנָה	יִתְשִׁבְנָה	יִתְיטְבְּנָה	יִתְעַמְּדְנָה
נִגֵּאַל	נִנְשׁ	נִפְל	נָתַן	נִשֵּׁב	נִיטֵב	נַעֲמֹד
גֵּאַל	נִנְשׁ	נִפְל	נָתַן	נִשֵּׁב	נִיטֵב	נַעֲמֹד
גֵּאַלִּי	נִנְשִׁי	נִפְלִי	נָתְנִי	נִשְׁבִּי	נִיטְבִּי	נַעֲמַדִּי
גֵּאַלּוּ	נִנְשׁוּ	נִפְלוּ	נָתְנוּ	נִשְׁבוּ	נִיטְבוּ	נַעֲמְדוּ
גֵּאַלְנָה	נִנְשְׁנָה	נִפְלְנָה	נָתְנָה	נִשְׁבְּנָה	נִיטְבְּנָה	נַעֲמַדְנָה
גֵּאַוֹל	נִנְשׁוּ	נִפְלוּ	נָתְנוּ	נִשְׁבוּ	נִיטְבוּ	נַעֲמְדוּ
גֵּאַל	נִנְשׁ / נִשְׁת	נִפְל	נָתַתְּ / נָתַתְּ	נִשְׁבֶּת	נִיטְבֶּת	נַעֲמַדְתְּ
גֵּאַל	נִנְשׁ	נִפְל	נָתַתְּ	נִשְׁבֶּת	נִיטְבֶּת	נַעֲמַדְתְּ
גֵּאַוֹל	נִנְשׁוּ	נִפְלוּ	נָתְנוּ	נִשְׁבוּ	נִיטְבוּ	נַעֲמְדוּ
וִיגֵּאַל	וִינְשׁ	וִיפֹל	וִינָתַן	וִישֵׁב	וִיטֵב	וַיַּעֲמֹד



Niphal		Strong (שׁמר)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גלה)	III-gutt. (שמע)	III- <sup>3</sup> aleph (מצא)	II-vav (כין)
Perf.	3ms	נִשְׁמַר	נִגְלָה	נִשְׁמַע	נִמְצָא	נִכּוֹן
	3fs	נִשְׁמְרָה	נִגְלְתָה	נִשְׁמָעָה	נִמְצְאָה	נִכּוֹנָה
	2ms	נִשְׁמַרְתָּ	נִגְלִיתָ	נִשְׁמַעְתָּ	נִמְצַאתָ	נִכּוֹנוֹתָ
	2fs	נִשְׁמַרְתְּ	נִגְלִיתְּ	נִשְׁמַעְתְּ	נִמְצַאתְּ	נִכּוֹנוֹתְּ
	1cs	נִשְׁמַרְתִּי	נִגְלִיתִי	נִשְׁמַעְתִּי	נִמְצַאתִי	נִכּוֹנוֹתִי
	3cp	נִשְׁמְרוּ	נִגְלוּ	נִשְׁמְעוּ	נִמְצְאוּ	נִכּוֹנוּ
	2mp	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	נִגְלִיתֶם	נִשְׁמַעְתֶּם	נִמְצַאתֶם	נִכּוֹנוֹתֶם
	2fp	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	נִגְלִיתֶן	נִשְׁמַעְתֶּן	נִמְצַאתֶן	נִכּוֹנוֹתֶן
	1cp	נִשְׁמְרוּ	נִגְלִינוּ	נִשְׁמְעוּ	נִמְצְאוּ	נִכּוֹנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִשְׁמַר	יִגְלָה	יִשְׁמַע	יִמְצָא	יִכּוֹן
	3fs	תִּשְׁמְרָה	תִּגְלָה	תִּשְׁמָעָה	תִּמְצְאָה	תִּכּוֹן
	2ms	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגְלָה	תִּשְׁמַע	תִּמְצָא	תִּכּוֹן
	2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּגְלִי	תִּשְׁמְעִי	תִּמְצְאִי	תִּכּוֹנִי
	1cs	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶגְלָה	אֶשְׁמַע	אֶמְצָא	אֶכּוֹן
	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִגְלוּ	יִשְׁמְעוּ	יִמְצְאוּ	יִכּוֹנוּ
	3fp	תִּשְׁמְרֶנָּה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁמַעְנָה	תִּמְצְאִינָה	תִּכּוֹנָה
	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּגְלוּ	תִּשְׁמְעוּ	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּכּוֹנוּ
	2fp	תִּשְׁמְרֶנָּה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁמַעְנָה	תִּמְצְאִינָה	תִּכּוֹנָה
	1cp	נִשְׁמַר	נִגְלָה	נִשְׁמַע	נִמְצָא	נִכּוֹן
Impv.	2ms	הִשְׁמַר	הִגְלָה	הִשְׁמַע	הִמְצָא	הִכּוֹן
	2fs	הִשְׁמְרִי	הִגְלִי	הִשְׁמְעִי	הִמְצְאִי	הִכּוֹנִי
	2mp	הִשְׁמְרוּ	הִגְלוּ	הִשְׁמְעוּ	הִמְצְאוּ	הִכּוֹנוּ
	2fp	הִשְׁמְרֶנָּה	הִגְלִינָה	הִשְׁמַעְנָה	הִמְצְאִינָה	הִכּוֹנָה
Inf.	Abs.	הִשְׁמַר	נִגְלָה	נִשְׁמַע	נִמְצָא	הִכּוֹן
		נִשְׁמַר	הִגְלָה	הִשְׁמַע	הִמְצָא	
	Cstr.	הִשְׁמַר	הִגְלוֹת	הִשְׁמַע	הִמְצָא	הִכּוֹן
Part.		נִשְׁמַר	נִגְלָה	נִשְׁמַע	נִמְצָא	נִכּוֹן
Vav consec.		וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּגְלָל	וַיִּשְׁמַע	וַיִּמְצָא	וַיִּכּוֹן

		II-guttural (גאל)	I-nun (נצל)	I-vav (יִשב)	I-guttural (עזב)
Perf.	3ms	נִגְאַל	נִצַּל	נִוְשַׁב	נִעְזַב
	3fs	נִגְאַלָּה	נִצַּלָּה	נִוְשַׁבָּה	נִעְזַבָּה
	2ms	נִגְאַלְתָּ	נִצַּלְתָּ	נִוְשַׁבְתָּ	נִעְזַבְתָּ
	2fs	נִגְאַלְתְּ	נִצַּלְתְּ	נִוְשַׁבְתְּ	נִעְזַבְתְּ
	1cs	נִגְאַלְתִּי	נִצַּלְתִּי	נִוְשַׁבְתִּי	נִעְזַבְתִּי
	3cp	נִגְאַלוּ	נִצַּלוּ	נִוְשַׁבוּ	נִעְזַבוּ
	2mp	נִגְאַלְתֶּם	נִצַּלְתֶּם	נִוְשַׁבְתֶּם	נִעְזַבְתֶּם
	2fp	נִגְאַלְתֶּן	נִצַּלְתֶּן	נִוְשַׁבְתֶּן	נִעְזַבְתֶּן
	1cp	נִגְאַלְנוּ	נִצַּלְנוּ	נִוְשַׁבְנוּ	נִעְזַבְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִגְאַל	יִנְצַל	יִוְשַׁב	יִעְזַב
	3fs	תִּגְאַל	תִּנְצַל	תִּוְשַׁב	תִּעְזַב
	2ms	תִּגְאַל	תִּנְצַל	תִּוְשַׁב	תִּעְזַב
	2fs	תִּגְאַלִּי	תִּנְצַלִּי	תִּוְשַׁבִּי	תִּעְזַבִּי
	1cs	אִגְאַל	אִנְצַל	אִוְשַׁב	אִעְזַב
	3mp	יִגְאַלוּ	יִנְצַלוּ	יִוְשַׁבוּ	יִעְזַבוּ
	3fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּנְצַלְנָה	תִּוְשַׁבְנָה	תִּעְזַבְנָה
	2mp	תִּגְאַלוּ	תִּנְצַלוּ	תִּוְשַׁבוּ	תִּעְזַבוּ
	2fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּנְצַלְנָה	תִּוְשַׁבְנָה	תִּעְזַבְנָה
	1cp	נִגְאַל	נִנְצַל	נִוְשַׁב	נִעְזַב
Impv.	2ms	הִגְאַל	הִנְצַל	הִוְשַׁב	הִעְזַב
	2fs	הִגְאַלִּי	הִנְצַלִּי	הִוְשַׁבִּי	הִעְזַבִּי
	2mp	הִגְאַלוּ	הִנְצַלוּ	הִוְשַׁבוּ	הִעְזַבוּ
	2fp	הִגְאַלְנָה	הִנְצַלְנָה	הִוְשַׁבְנָה	הִעְזַבְנָה
Inf.	Abs.	נִגְאַוֹל	הִנְצַל	הִוְשַׁב	נִעְזַב/הִעְזַב
	Cstr.	הִגְאַל	הִנְצַל	הִוְשַׁב	הִעְזַב
Part.		נִגְאַל	נִצַּל	נִוְשַׁב	נִעְזַב
Vav consec.		וַיִּגְאַל	וַיִּנְצַל	וַיִּוְשַׁב	וַיִּעְזַב

Piel		Strong (שִׁמַּר)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גִּלָּה)	III-guttural (שִׁלַּח)	III- <sup>2</sup> aleph (מִצָּא)	II-vav (קוּם)
Perf.	3ms	שִׁמַּר	גִּלָּה	שִׁלַּח	מִצָּא	קוּם
	3fs	שִׁמְרָה	גִּלְתָּה	שִׁלַּחַה	מִצָּאָה	קוּמָה
	2ms	שִׁמַּרְתָּ	גִּלִּיתָ	שִׁלַּחְתָּ	מִצָּאֲתָ	קוּמָתָ
	2fs	שִׁמַּרְתְּ	גִּלִּיתִי	שִׁלַּחְתְּ	מִצָּאֲתִי	קוּמָתִי
	1cs	שִׁמַּרְתִּי	גִּלִּיתִי	שִׁלַּחְתִּי	מִצָּאֲתִי	קוּמָתִי
	3cp	שִׁמְרוּ	גִּלוּ	שִׁלְחוּ	מִצָּאוּ	קוּמוּ
	2mp	שִׁמַּרְתֶּם	גִּלִּיתֶם	שִׁלַּחְתֶּם	מִצָּאֲתֶם	קוּמָתֶם
	2fp	שִׁמַּרְתֶּן	גִּלִּיתֶן	שִׁלַּחְתֶּן	מִצָּאֲתֶן	קוּמָתֶן
	1cp	שִׁמַּרְנוּ	גִּלִּינוּ	שִׁלַּחְנוּ	מִצָּאֲנוּ	קוּמָנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִשְׁמַר	יִגְלֶה	יִשְׁלַח	יִמְצָא	יִקְוֶה
	3fs	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגְלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְצָא	תִּקְוֶה
	2ms	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגְלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְצָא	תִּקְוֶה
	2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּגְלִי	תִּשְׁלַחִי	תִּמְצָאִי	תִּקְוִמִי
	1cs	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶגְלֶה	אֶשְׁלַח	אֶמְצָא	אֶקְוֶה
	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִגְלוּ	יִשְׁלְחוּ	יִמְצְאוּ	יִקְוִמוּ
	3fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצָאֲנָה	תִּקְוִמְנָה
	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּגְלוּ	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּקְוִמוּ
	2fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצָאֲנָה	תִּקְוִמְנָה
	1cp	נִשְׁמַר	נִגְלֶה	נִשְׁלַח	נִמְצָא	נִקְוֶה
Impv.	2ms	שִׁמַּר	גִּלָּה	שִׁלַּח	מִצָּא	קוּם
	2fs	שִׁמְרִי	גִּלִּי	שִׁלַּחִי	מִצָּאִי	קוּמִי
	2mp	שִׁמְרוּ	גִּלוּ	שִׁלְחוּ	מִצָּאוּ	קוּמוּ
	2fp	שִׁמַּרְנָה	גִּלִּינָה	שִׁלַּחְנָה	מִצָּאֲנָה	קוּמְנָה
Inf.	Abs.	שִׁמַּר	גִּלָּה	שִׁלַּח	מִצָּא	קוּם
		שִׁמַּר	גִּלָּה	שִׁלַּח	מִצָּא	קוּם
	Cstr.	שִׁמַּר	גִּלּוֹת	שִׁלַּח	מִצָּא	קוּם
Part.	Act.	מִשְׁמַר	מִגְלָה	מִשְׁלַח	מִמְצָא	מִקְוֶה
Vav consec.		וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּגְלֶל	וַיִּשְׁלַח	וַיִּמְצָא	וַיִּקְוֶה

		II-gutt. (גאל)	I-nun (נצל)	I-vav (ישב)	I-yod (יטב)	I-gutt. (עמד)
Perf.	3ms	גָּאַל	נָצַל	יָשַׁב	יָטַב	עָמַד
	3fs	גָּאַלָּה	נָצַלָּה	יָשְׁבָה	יָטְבָה	עָמְדָה
	2ms	גָּאַלְתָּ	נָצַלְתָּ	יָשַׁבְתָּ	יָטַבְתָּ	עָמַדְתָּ
	2fs	גָּאַלְתְּ	נָצַלְתְּ	יָשַׁבְתְּ	יָטַבְתְּ	עָמַדְתְּ
	1cs	גָּאַלְתִּי	נָצַלְתִּי	יָשַׁבְתִּי	יָטַבְתִּי	עָמַדְתִּי
	3cp	גָּאַלוּ	נָצְלוּ	יָשְׁבוּ	יָטְבוּ	עָמְדוּ
	2mp	גָּאַלְתֶּם	נָצַלְתֶּם	יָשַׁבְתֶּם	יָטַבְתֶּם	עָמַדְתֶּם
	2fp	גָּאַלְתֶּן	נָצַלְתֶּן	יָשַׁבְתֶּן	יָטַבְתֶּן	עָמַדְתֶּן
	1cp	גָּאַלְנוּ	נָצַלְנוּ	יָשַׁבְנוּ	יָטַבְנוּ	עָמַדְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִגְאַל	יִנְצַל	יִישַׁב	יִיטַב	יִעֲמַד
	3fs	תִּגְאַל	תִּנְצַל	תִּישַׁב	תִּיטַב	תִּעֲמַד
	2ms	תִּגְאַלְ	תִּנְצַלְ	תִּישַׁבְ	תִּיטַבְ	תִּעֲמַדְ
	2fs	תִּגְאַלִּי	תִּנְצַלִּי	תִּישַׁבִּי	תִּיטַבִּי	תִּעֲמַדִּי
	1cs	אֶגְאַל	אֶנְצַל	אֶישַׁב	אֶיטַב	אֶעֱמַד
	3mp	יִגְאַלוּ	יִנְצְלוּ	יִישְׁבוּ	יִיטְבוּ	יִעֲמְדוּ
	3fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּנְצַלְנָה	תִּישְׁבְּנָה	תִּיטְבְּנָה	תִּעֲמַדְנָה
	2mp	תִּגְאַלוּ	תִּנְצְלוּ	תִּישְׁבוּ	תִּיטְבוּ	תִּעֲמְדוּ
	2fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּנְצַלְנָה	תִּישְׁבְּנָה	תִּיטְבְּנָה	תִּעֲמַדְנָה
	1cp	נִגְאַל	נִנְצַל	נִישַׁב	נִיטַב	נִעֲמַד
Impv.	2ms	גָּאַל	נָצַל	יָשַׁב	יָטַב	עָמַד
	2fs	גָּאַלִּי	נָצַלִּי	יָשַׁבִּי	יָטַבִּי	עָמַדִּי
	2mp	גָּאַלוּ	נָצְלוּ	יָשְׁבוּ	יָטְבוּ	עָמְדוּ
	2fp	גָּאַלְנָה	נָצַלְנָה	יָשְׁבְּנָה	יָטְבְּנָה	עָמְדְנָה
Inf.	Abs.			יָשַׁב		
		גָּאַל	נָצַל	יָשַׁב	יָטַב	עָמַד
	Cstr.	גָּאַל	נָצַל	יָשַׁב	יָטַב	עָמַד
Part.	Act.	מִגְאַל	מִנְצַל	מִישַׁב	מִיטַב	מִעֲמַד
Vav consec.		וַיִּגְאַל	וַיִּנְצַל	וַיִּישַׁב	וַיִּיטַב	וַיִּעֲמַד

Pual		Strong (שׁמר)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גלה)	III-gutt. (שלח)	III- <sup>3</sup> aleph (מלא)	II-vav
Perf.	3ms	שָׁמַר	גָּלָה	שָׁלַח	מָלָא	rare and usually with doubly weak roots
	3fs	שָׁמְרָה	גָּלְתָה	שָׁלְחָה	מָלְאָה	
	2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	גָּלִיתָ	שָׁלַחְתָּ	מָלַאְתָּ	
	2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	גָּלִיתְּ	שָׁלַחְתְּ	מָלַאְתְּ	
	1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	גָּלִיתִי	שָׁלַחְתִּי	מָלַאְתִּי	
	3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	גָּלוּ	שָׁלְחוּ	מָלְאוּ	
	2mp	שָׁמַרְתֶּם	גָּלִיתֶם	שָׁלַחְתֶּם	מָלַאְתֶּם	
	2fp	שָׁמַרְתֶּן	גָּלִיתֶן	שָׁלַחְתֶּן	מָלַאְתֶּן	
	1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	גָּלִינוּ	שָׁלַחְנוּ	מָלַאְנוּ	
Impf.	3ms	יִשְׁמַר	יִגָּלֶה	יִשְׁלַח	יִמְלֹא	
	3fs	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגָּלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְלֹא	
	2ms	תִּשְׁמַר	תִּגָּלֶה	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּמְלֹא	
	2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּגְלִי	תִּשְׁלְחִי	תִּמְלְאִי	
	1cs	אֶשְׁמַר	אֶגָּלֶה	אֶשְׁלַח	אֶמְלֹא	
	3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִגָּלוּ	יִשְׁלְחוּ	יִמְלְאוּ	
	3fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְלֹאנָה	
	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּגָּלוּ	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	תִּמְלְאוּ	
	2fp	תִּשְׁמַרְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְלֹאנָה	
	1cp	נִשְׁמַר	נִגָּלֶה	נִשְׁלַח	נִמְלֹא הוֹדוּ תְּמוֹ נִמְלֹא	
Inf.	Abs.	שָׁמַר	none	none	none	none
	Cstr.	none	גָּלוֹת			
Part.	Pass.	מְשַׁמֵּר	מְגָלֶה	מְשַׁלֵּחַ	מְמַלֵּא	
Vav consec.		וַיִּשְׁמַר	וַיִּגָּל	וַיִּשְׁלַח	וַיִּמְלֹא	
Jussive		יִשְׁמַר	יִגָּל	יִשְׁלַח	יִמְלֹא	

		II-gutt. (רחץ)	I-nun (נתץ)	I-vav/yod (ילד)	I-gutt. (חלק)
Perf.	3ms	רָחַץ	נָתַץ	יָלַד	חָלַק
	3fs	רָחְצָה	נָתְצָה	יָלְדָה	חָלְקָה
	2ms	רָחַצְתָּ	נָתַצְתָּ	יָלַדְתָּ	חָלַקְתָּ
	2fs	רָחַצְתְּ	נָתַצְתְּ	יָלַדְתְּ	חָלַקְתְּ
	1cs	רָחַצְתִּי	נָתַצְתִּי	יָלַדְתִּי	חָלַקְתִּי
	3cp	רָחְצוּ	נָתְצוּ	יָלְדוּ	חָלְקוּ
	2mp	רָחַצְתֶּם	נָתַצְתֶּם	יָלַדְתֶּם	חָלַקְתֶּם
	2fp	רָחַצְתֶּן	נָתַצְתֶּן	יָלַדְתֶּן	חָלַקְתֶּן
	1cp	רָחַצְנוּ	נָתַצְנוּ	יָלַדְנוּ	חָלַקְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִרְחֹץ	יִנְתֹּץ	יִילֹד	יִחְלֹק
	3fs	תִּרְחֹץ	תִּנְתֹּץ	תִּילֹד	תִּחְלֹק
	2ms	תִּרְחֹץ	תִּנְתֹּץ	תִּילֹד	תִּחְלֹק
	2fs	תִּרְחֹצִי	תִּנְתֹּצִי	תִּילְדִי	תִּחְלֹקִי
	1cs	אֶרְחֹץ	אֶנְתֹּץ	אֶילֹד	אֶחְלֹק
	3mp	יִרְחְצוּ	יִנְתְּצוּ	יִילְדוּ	יִחְלְקוּ
	3fp	תִּרְחַצְנָה	תִּנְתַּצְנָה	תִּילְדְּנָה	תִּחְלַקְנָה
	2mp	תִּרְחְצוּ	תִּנְתְּצוּ	תִּילְדוּ	תִּחְלְקוּ
	2fp	תִּרְחַצְנָה	תִּנְתַּצְנָה	תִּילְדְּנָה	תִּחְלַקְנָה
	1cp	נִרְחֹץ	נִנְתֹּץ	נִילֹד	נִחְלֹק
Inf.	Abs. Cstr.	not attested	not attested	not attested	not attested
Part.	Pass.	מִרְחֹץ	מִנְתֹּץ	מִילֹד	מִחְלֹק
Vav consec.		וַיִּרְחֹץ	וַיִּנְתֹּץ	וַיִּילֹד	וַיִּחְלֹק

Hitpael		Strong (קדש)	III-he <sup>2</sup> (גלה)	III-gutt. (שלח)	III- <sup>3</sup> aleph (מצא)
Perf.	3ms	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִתְגַּלָּה	הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הִתְמַצֵּא
	3fs	הִתְקַדְּשָׁה	הִתְגַּלְתָּה	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְהִי	הִתְמַצְּאָה
	2ms	הִתְקַדֵּשְׁתָּ	הִתְגַּלִּיתָ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתָּ	הִתְמַצְּאָתָּ
	2fs	הִתְקַדְּשִׁית	הִתְגַּלִּיתְּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתְּ	הִתְמַצְּאָתְּ
	1cs	הִתְקַדֵּשְׁתִּי	הִתְגַּלִּיתִי	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתִּי	הִתְמַצְּאָתִי
	3cp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִתְגַּלּוּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחוּ	הִתְמַצְּאוּ
	2mp	הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתֶם	הִתְגַּלִּיתֶם	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֶּם	הִתְמַצְּאִיתֶם
	2fp	הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתֵן	הִתְגַּלִּיתֵן	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֵּן	הִתְמַצְּאִיתֵן
	1cp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִתְגַּלִּינוּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנוּ	הִתְמַצְּאִינוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִתְקַדֵּשׁ	יִתְגַּלָּה	יִשְׁתַּלַּח	יִתְמַצֵּא
	3fs	תִּתְקַדְּשָׁה	תִּתְגַּלְתָּה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תִּתְמַצְּאָה
	2ms	תִּתְקַדֵּשְׁתָּ	תִּתְגַּלִּיתָ	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תִּתְמַצְּאָתָּ
	2fs	תִּתְקַדְּשִׁית	תִּתְגַּלִּיתְּ	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְי	תִּתְמַצְּאָתִי
	1cs	אֶתְקַדֵּשׁ	אֶתְגַּלָּה	אֶשְׁתַּלַּח	אֶתְמַצֵּא
	3mp	יִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	יִתְגַּלּוּ	יִשְׁתַּלַּחוּ	יִתְמַצְּאוּ
	3fp	תִּתְקַדְּשִׁינָה	תִּתְגַּלִּינָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תִּתְמַצְּאִינָה
	2mp	תִּתְקַדְּשׁוּ	תִּתְגַּלּוּ	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחוּ	תִּתְמַצְּאוּ
	2fp	תִּתְקַדְּשִׁינָה	תִּתְגַּלִּינָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תִּתְמַצְּאִינָה
	1cp	נִתְקַדֵּשׁ	נִתְגַּלָּה	נִשְׁתַּלַּח	נִתְמַצֵּא
Impv.	2ms	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִתְגַּלָּה	הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הִתְמַצֵּא
	2fs	הִתְקַדְּשִׁי	הִתְגַּלִּי	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְי	הִתְמַצְּאִי
	2mp	הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ	הִתְגַּלּוּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחוּ	הִתְמַצְּאוּ
	2fp	הִתְקַדְּשִׁינָה	הִתְגַּלִּינָה	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	הִתְמַצְּאִינָה
Inf.	Abs.	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ		הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הִתְמַצֵּא
	Cstr.	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	הִתְגַּלּוֹת	הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הִתְמַצֵּא
Part.	Act.	מִתְקַדֵּשׁ	מִתְגַּלָּה	מִשְׁתַּלַּח	מִתְמַצֵּא
Vav consec.		וַיִּתְקַדֵּשׁ	וַיִּתְגַּלָּל	וַיִּשְׁתַּלַּח	וַיִּתְמַצֵּא

		II-guttural	I-nun	I-vav	I-guttural
Perf.	3ms	הִתְרַחֵץ	הִתְנַדֵּב	Rare and only on doubly weak roots. (יֵדָה, יֵדַע)	הִתְחַזֵּק <sup>1</sup>
	3fs	הִתְרַחְצָה	הִתְנַדְּבָה		הִתְחַזְּקָה
	2ms	הִתְרַחַצְתָּ	הִתְנַדַּבְתָּ		הִתְחַזַּקְתָּ
	2fs	הִתְרַחַצְתְּ	הִתְנַדַּבְתְּ		הִתְחַזַּקְתְּ
	1cs	הִתְרַחַצְתִּי	הִתְנַדַּבַּתִּי		הִתְחַזַּקְתִּי
	3cp	הִתְרַחְצוּ	הִתְנַדְּבוּ		הִתְחַזְּקוּ
	2mp	הִתְרַחַצְתֶּם	הִתְנַדַּבַּתֶּם		הִתְחַזַּקְתֶּם
	2fp	הִתְרַחַצְתֶּן	הִתְנַדַּבַּתֶּן		הִתְחַזַּקְתֶּן
	1cp	הִתְרַחַצְנוּ	הִתְנַדַּבְנוּ		הִתְחַזַּקְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִתְרַחֵץ	יִתְנַדֵּב		יִתְחַזֵּק
	3fs	תִּתְרַחֵץ	תִּתְנַדֵּב		תִּתְחַזֵּק
	2ms	תִּתְרַחֵץ	תִּתְנַדֵּב		תִּתְחַזֵּק
	2fs	תִּתְרַחֲצִי	תִּתְנַדְּבִי		תִּתְחַזְּקִי
	1cs	אֶתְרַחֵץ	אֶתְנַדֵּב		אֶתְחַזֵּק
	3mp	יִתְרַחְצוּ	יִתְנַדְּבוּ		יִתְחַזְּקוּ
	3fp	תִּתְרַחַצְנָה	תִּתְנַדְּבָנָה		תִּתְחַזְּקָנָה
	2mp	תִּתְרַחְצוּ	תִּתְנַדְּבוּ		תִּתְחַזְּקוּ
	2fp	תִּתְרַחַצְנָה	תִּתְנַדְּבָנָה		תִּתְחַזְּקָנָה
	1cp	נִתְרַחֵץ	נִתְנַדֵּב		נִתְחַזֵּק
Impv.	2ms	הִתְרַחֵץ	הִתְנַדֵּב		הִתְחַזֵּק
	2fs	הִתְרַחֲצִי	הִתְנַדְּבִי		הִתְחַזְּקִי
	2mp	הִתְרַחְצוּ	הִתְנַדְּבוּ		הִתְחַזְּקוּ
	2fp	הִתְרַחַצְנָה	הִתְנַדְּבָנָה		הִתְחַזְּקָנָה
Inf.	Abs.	הִתְרַחֵץ	הִתְנַדֵּב		הִתְחַזֵּק
	Cstr.	הִתְרַחֵץ	הִתְנַדֵּב		הִתְחַזֵּק
Part.	Act.	מִתְרַחֵץ	מִתְנַדֵּב		מִתְחַזֵּק
Vav consec.		וַיִּתְרַחֵץ	וַיִּתְנַדֵּב		וַיִּתְחַזֵּק

<sup>1</sup> Often in the perfect and sometimes in the imperfect, I-guttural roots have an a-class rather than the expected i-class vowel under the second root letter. This is the case with the root חִזַּק.



<b>Hiphil</b>		Strong (קרב)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גלה)	III-gutt. (שלח)	III- <sup>2</sup> aleph (מצא)	II-vav (קום)
Perf.	3ms	הִקְרִיב	הִגְלָה	הִשְׁלִיחַ	הִמְצִיא	הִקִּים
	3fs	הִקְרִיבָה	הִגְלָתָהּ	הִשְׁלִיחָהּ	הִמְצִיאָהּ	הִקִּימָהּ
	2ms	הִקְרַבְתָּ	הִגְלִיתָ	הִשְׁלַחְתָּ	הִמְצַאתָ	הִקִּימוֹתָ
	2fs	הִקְרַבְתְּ	הִגְלִיתְּ	הִשְׁלַחְתְּ	הִמְצַאתְּ	הִקִּימוֹתְּ
	1cs	הִקְרַבְתִּי	הִגְלִיתִי	הִשְׁלַחְתִּי	הִמְצַאתִי	הִקִּימוֹתִי
	3cp	הִקְרִיבוּ	הִגְלוּ	הִשְׁלִיחוּ	הִמְצִאוּ	הִקִּימוּ
	2mp	הִקְרַבְתֶּם	הִגְלִיתֶם	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּם	הִמְצַאתֶם	הִקִּימוֹתֶם
	2fp	הִקְרַבְתֶּן	הִגְלִיתֶן	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּן	הִמְצַאתֶן	הִקִּימוֹתֶן
	1cp	הִקְרַבְנוּ	הִגְלִינוּ	הִשְׁלַחְנוּ	הִמְצַאנוּ	הִקִּימוּנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִקְרִיב	יִגְלָה	יִשְׁלִיחַ	יִמְצִיא	יִקִּים
	3fs	תִּקְרִיב	תִּגְלָה	תִּשְׁלִיחַ	תִּמְצִיא	תִּקִּים
	2ms	תִּקְרִיב	תִּגְלָה	תִּשְׁלִיחַ	תִּמְצִיא	תִּקִּים
	2fs	תִּקְרִיבִי	תִּגְלִי	תִּשְׁלִיחִי	תִּמְצִיאִי	תִּקִּימִי
	1cs	אֶקְרִיב	אֶגְלָה	אֶשְׁלִיחַ	אֶמְצִיא	אֶקִּים
	3mp	יִקְרִיבוּ	יִגְלוּ	יִשְׁלִיחוּ	יִמְצִאוּ	יִקִּימוּ
	3fp	תִּקְרַבְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצַאנָה	תִּקִּימֶינָה
	2mp	תִּקְרִיבוּ	תִּגְלוּ	תִּשְׁלִיחוּ	תִּמְצִאוּ	תִּקִּימוּ
	2fp	תִּקְרַבְנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּמְצַאנָה	תִּקִּימֶינָה
	1cp	נִקְרִיב	נִגְלָה	נִשְׁלִיחַ	נִמְצִיא	נִקִּים
Impv.	2ms	הִקְרַב	הִגְלָה	הִשְׁלַח	הִמְצֵא	הִקֵּם
	2fs	הִקְרִיבִי	הִגְלִי	הִשְׁלִיחִי	הִמְצִיאִי	הִקִּימִי
	2mp	הִקְרִיבוּ	הִגְלוּ	הִשְׁלִיחוּ	הִמְצִאוּ	הִקִּימוּ
	2fp	הִקְרַבְנָה	הִגְלִינָה	הִשְׁלַחְנָה	הִמְצַאנָה	הִקִּימֶינָה
Inf.	Abs.	הִקְרַב	הִגְלָה	הִשְׁלַח	הִמְצֵא	הִקֵּם
	Cstr.	הִקְרִיב	הִגְלוֹת	הִשְׁלִיחַ	הִמְצִיא	הִקִּים
Part.		מִקְרִיב	מִגְלָה	מִשְׁלִיחַ	מִמְצִיא	מִקִּים
Vav consec.		וַיִּקְרַב	וַיִּגְלַל	וַיִּשְׁלַח	וַיִּמְצֵא	וַיִּקֵּם

		II-gutt. (גאל)	I-nun (נצל)	I-vav (ישוב)	I-yod (יטב)	I-gutt. (עמד)
Perf.	3ms	הָגַאִיל	הָצִיל	הוֹשִׁיב	הִיטִיב	הָעָמִיד
	3fs	הָגַאִילָה	הָצִילָה	הוֹשִׁיבָה	הִיטִיבָה	הָעָמִידָה
	2ms	הִגַּאִלְתָּ	הִצַּלְתָּ	הוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הִיטַבְתָּ	הָעָמַדְתָּ
	2fs	הִגַּאִלְתְּ	הִצַּלְתְּ	הוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הִיטַבְתְּ	הָעָמַדְתְּ
	1cs	הִגַּאִלְתִּי	הִצַּלְתִּי	הוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הִיטַבְתִּי	הָעָמַדְתִּי
	3cp	הִגַּאִילוּ	הִצִּילוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הִיטִיבוּ	הָעָמְדוּ
	2mp	הִגַּאִלְתֶּם	הִצַּלְתֶּם	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הִיטַבְתֶּם	הָעָמַדְתֶּם
	2fp	הִגַּאִלְתֶּן	הִצַּלְתֶּן	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הִיטַבְתֶּן	הָעָמַדְתֶּן
	1cp	הִגַּאִלְנוּ	הִצִּלְנוּ	הוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הִיטַבְנוּ	הָעָמַדְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִגַּאִיל	יִצִּיל	יִוֹשִׁיב	יִיטִיב	יִעָמִיד
	3fs	תִּגַּאִיל	תִּצִּיל	תוֹשִׁיב	תִּיטִיב	תִּעָמִיד
	2ms	תִּגַּאִיל	תִּצִּיל	תוֹשִׁיב	תִּיטִיב	תִּעָמִיד
	2fs	תִּגַּאִילִי	תִּצִּילִי	תוֹשִׁיבִי	תִּיטִיבִי	תִּעָמִידִי
	1cs	אֶגַּאִיל	אֶצִּיל	אֹשִׁיב	אִיטִיב	אֶעָמִיד
	3mp	יִגַּאִילוּ	יִצִּילוּ	יִוֹשִׁיבוּ	יִיטִיבוּ	יִעָמְדוּ
	3fp	תִּגַּאִלְנָה	תִּצִּלְנָה	תוֹשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תִּעָמְדְנָה
	2mp	תִּגַּאִילוּ	תִּצִּילוּ	תוֹשִׁיבוּ	תִּיטִיבוּ	תִּעָמְדוּ
	2fp	תִּגַּאִלְנָה	תִּצִּלְנָה	תוֹשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תִּעָמְדְנָה
	1cp	נִגַּאִיל	נִצִּיל	נוֹשִׁיב	נוֹיטִיב	נִעָמִיד
Impv.	2ms	הִגַּאֵל	הִצֵּל	הוֹשֵׁב	הִיטֵב	הָעָמַד
	2fs	הִגַּאִילִי	הִצִּילִי	הוֹשִׁיבִי	הִיטִיבִי	הָעָמִידִי
	2mp	הִגַּאִילוּ	הִצִּילוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הִיטִיבוּ	הָעָמְדוּ
	2fp	הִגַּאִלְנָה	הִצִּלְנָה	הוֹשַׁבְנָה	הִיטַבְנָה	הָעָמַדְנָה
Inf.	Abs.	הִגַּאֵל	הִצֵּל	הוֹשֵׁב	הִיטֵב	הָעָמַד
	Cstr.	הִגַּאִיל	הִצִּיל	הוֹשִׁיב	הִיטִיב	הָעָמִיד
Part.		מִגַּאִיל	מִצִּיל	מוֹשִׁיב	מִיטִיב	מִעָמִיד
Vav consec.		וַיִּגַּאֵל	וַיִּצֵּל	וַיֹּשֵׁב	וַיִּיטֵב	וַיַּעֲמֵד

Hophal		Strong (פקד)	III-he <sup>3</sup> (גלה)	III-guttural (מלח)	II-vav (סור)
Perf.	3ms	הִפָּקֵד	הִגָּלָה	הִמָּלַח	הוֹסֵר
	3fs	הִפָּקְדָה	הִגָּלְתָה	הִמָּלַחְתָּה	הוֹסְרָה
	2ms	הִפָּקְדָתָ	הִגָּלִיתָ	הִמָּלַחְתָּ	הוֹסְרָתָ
	2fs	הִפָּקְדָתְ	הִגָּלִיתְ	הִמָּלַחְתְּ	הוֹסְרָתְ
	1cs	הִפָּקְדֹתִי	הִגָּלִיתִי	הִמָּלַחְתִּי	הוֹסְרֹתִי
	3cp	הִפָּקְדוּ	הִגָּלוּ	הִמָּלְחוּ	הוֹסְרוּ
	2mp	הִפָּקְדֶתֶם	הִגָּלִיתֶם	הִמָּלַחְתֶּם	הוֹסְרֶתֶם
	2fp	הִפָּקְדֶתֶן	הִגָּלִיתֶן	הִמָּלַחְתֶּן	הוֹסְרֶתֶן
	1cp	הִפָּקְדֻנוּ	הִגָּלִינוּ	הִמָּלְחֻנוּ	הוֹסְרֻנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִפָּקֵד	יִגָּלָה	יִמָּלַח	יוֹסֵר
	3fs	תִּפָּקְדָה	תִּגָּלְתָה	תִּמָּלַח	תוֹסְרָה
	2ms	תִּפָּקְדָתָ	תִּגָּלִיתָ	תִּמָּלַח	תוֹסְרָתָ
	2fs	תִּפָּקְדִי	תִּגָּלִי	תִּמָּלַחִי	תוֹסְרִי
	1cs	אֶפָּקֵד	אֶגָּלָה	אֶמָּלַח	אוֹסֵר
	3mp	יִפָּקְדוּ	יִגָּלוּ	יִמָּלְחוּ	יוֹסְרוּ
	3fp	תִּפָּקְדֶנָה	תִּגָּלִינָה	תִּמָּלַחְנָה	תוֹסְרֶנָה
	2mp	תִּפָּקְדוּ	תִּגָּלוּ	תִּמָּלְחוּ	תוֹסְרוּ
	2fp	תִּפָּקְדֶנָה	תִּגָּלִינָה	תִּמָּלַחְנָה	תוֹסְרֶנָה
	1cp	נִפָּקֵד	נִגָּלָה	נִמָּלַח	נוֹסֵר
Impv.	2ms	הִפָּקֵד			
	2fs				
	2mp		הִגָּלוּ		
	2fp				
Inf.	Abs.	הִפָּקֵד	הִגָּלָה	הִמָּלַח	הוֹסֵר
	Cstr.				הוֹסֵר
Part.	Pass.	מִפָּקֵד	מִגָּלָה	מִמָּלַח	מוֹסֵר
Vav consec.		וַיִּפָּקֵד			וַיֹּסֵר

		I-nun (נַגַּשׁ)	I-vav (יִרְדּוּ)	I-yod (יִצְקוּ)	I-guttural (עֲמַדוּ)
Perf.	3ms	הִגִּישׁ	הִירְדּוּ	הִיִּצְקוּ	הִעֲמַדוּ
	3fs	הִגִּיֶּשׁה	הִירְדֶּה	הִיִּצְקֶה	הִעֲמִידֶה
	2ms	הִגִּשְׁתָּ	הִירְדַּתָּ	הִיִּצְקַתָּ	הִעֲמַדְתָּ
	2fs	הִגִּשְׁתְּ	הִירְדַּתְּ	הִיִּצְקַתְּ	הִעֲמַדְתְּ
	1cs	הִגִּשְׁתִּי	הִירְדַּתִּי	הִיִּצְקַתִּי	הִעֲמַדְתִּי
	3cp	הִגִּישׁוּ	הִירְדּוּ	הִיִּצְקוּ	הִעֲמַדּוּ
	2mp	הִגִּשְׁתֶּם	הִירְדַּתֶּם	הִיִּצְקַתֶּם	הִעֲמַדְתֶּם
	2fp	הִגִּשְׁתֶּן	הִירְדַּתֶּן	הִיִּצְקַתֶּן	הִעֲמַדְתֶּן
	1cp	הִגִּשְׁנוּ	הִירְדְּנוּ	הִיִּצְקְנוּ	הִעֲמַדְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִגִּשׁ	יִרְדּוּ	יִיִּצְקוּ	יִעֲמַדּוּ
	3fs	תִּגִּשׁ	תִּירְדּוּ	תִּיִּצְקוּ	תִּעֲמַדּוּ
	2ms	תִּגִּשׁ	תִּירְדּוּ	תִּיִּצְקוּ	תִּעֲמַדּוּ
	2fs	תִּגִּשִׁי	תִּירְדִּי	תִּיִּצְקִי	תִּעֲמַדִּי
	1cs	אֶגִּשׁ	אִירְדּוּ	אִיִּצְקוּ	אִעֲמַדּוּ
	3mp	יִגִּשׁוּ	יִירְדּוּ	יִיִּצְקוּ	יִעֲמַדּוּ
	3fp	תִּגִּשְׁנָה	תִּירְדְּנָה	תִּיִּצְקְנָה	תִּעֲמַדְנָה
	2mp	תִּגִּשׁוּ	תִּירְדּוּ	תִּיִּצְקוּ	תִּעֲמַדּוּ
	2fp	תִּגִּשְׁנָה	תִּירְדְּנָה	תִּיִּצְקְנָה	תִּעֲמַדְנָה
	1cp	נִגִּשׁ	נִירְדּוּ	נִיִּצְקוּ	נִעֲמַדּוּ
Inf.	Abs.	הִגִּשׁ	הִירְדּוּ	הִיִּצְקוּ	הִעֲמַדּוּ
	Cstr.	הִגִּשׁ	הִירְדּוּ	הִיִּצְקוּ	הִעֲמַדּוּ
Part.	Pass.	מִגִּשׁ	מִירְדּוּ	מִיִּצְקוּ	מִעֲמַדּוּ
Vav consec.		וַיִּגִּשׁ			

Minor Stems		Polel (קום)	Polal (רום)	Hitpolel (בין)
Perf.	3ms	קוֹמֵם	רוֹמֵם	הִתְבוֹנֵן
	3fs	קוֹמֶמֶה	רוֹמֶמֶה	הִתְבוֹנְנָה
	2ms	קוֹמַמְתָּ	רוֹמַמְתָּ	הִתְבוֹנַנְתָּ
	2fs	קוֹמַמְתְּ	רוֹמַמְתְּ	הִתְבוֹנַנְתְּ
	1cs	קוֹמַמְתִּי	רוֹמַמְתִּי	הִתְבוֹנַנְתִּי
	3cp	קוֹמְמוּ	רוֹמְמוּ	הִתְבוֹנְנוּ
	2mp	קוֹמַמְתֶּם	רוֹמַמְתֶּם	הִתְבוֹנַנְתֶּם
	2fp	קוֹמַמְתֶּן	רוֹמַמְתֶּן	הִתְבוֹנַנְתֶּן
	1cp	קוֹמַמְנוּ	רוֹמַמְנוּ	הִתְבוֹנַנְנוּ / הִתְבוֹנְנוּ
Impf.	3ms	יִקְוֵם	יִרְוֵם	יִתְבוֹנֵן
	3fs	תִּקְוֵם	תִּרְוֵם	תִּתְבוֹנֵן
	2ms	תִּקְוֵם	תִּרְוֵם	תִּתְבוֹנֵן
	2fs	תִּקְוֵמִי	תִּרְוֵמִי	תִּתְבוֹנְנִי
	1cs	אִקְוֵם	אִרְוֵם	אִתְבוֹנֵן
	3mp	יִקְוְמוּ	יִרְוְמוּ	יִתְבוֹנְנוּ
	3fp	תִּקְוְמוּנָה	תִּרְוְמוּנָה	תִּתְבוֹנְנָה
	2mp	תִּקְוְמוּ	תִּרְוְמוּ	תִּתְבוֹנְנוּ
	2fp	תִּקְוְמוּנָה	תִּרְוְמוּנָה	תִּתְבוֹנְנָה
	1cp	נִקְוֵם	נִרְוֵם	נִתְבוֹנֵן
Impv.	2ms	קוֹמֵם		הִתְבוֹנֵן
	2fs	קוֹמֵמִי		הִתְבוֹנְנִי
	2mp	קוֹמְמוּ		הִתְבוֹנְנוּ
	2fp	קוֹמְמוּנָה		הִתְבוֹנְנָה
Inf.	Abs.		not attested	
	Cstr.	קוֹמֵם		הִתְבוֹנֵן
Part.	Act.	מְקוֹמֵם		מִתְבוֹנֵן
	Pass.		מְרוֹמֵם	
Vav consec.		וַיִּקְוֵם	וַיִּרְוֵם	וַיִּתְבוֹנֵן

## Appendix D

### Transliteration

Transliteration refers to the writing of Hebrew in the letters used for English with some additional symbols. Transliteration enables the discussion of Hebrew words with readers who do not know Hebrew. The system for transliteration in the right column is from the *SBL Handbook of Style* (p. 26). It is useful for accurately representing the Hebrew of the Bible and reflects the pronunciation of Biblical and Rabbinic Hebrew. It is included here for those who continue in Hebrew.

Consonant	Transliteration
א	ʾ
ב	<u>b</u>
בּ	<i>b</i>
ג	<i>g</i>
גּ	<i>g</i>
ד	<u>d</u>
דּ	<i>d</i>
ה	<i>h</i>
ו	<i>w</i>
ז	<i>z</i>
ח	<u>h</u>
ט	<i>t</i>
י	<i>y</i>
כ	<u>k</u>
כּ	<i>k</i>

Consonant	Transliteration
ל	<i>l</i>
מ	<i>m</i>
נ	<i>n</i>
ס	<i>s</i>
ע	ʿ
פ	<u>p</u>
פּ	<i>p</i>
צ	<i>ṣ</i>
ק	<i>q</i>
ר	<i>r</i>
ש	<i>s</i>
שׁ	<i>š</i>
ת	<u>t</u>
תּ	<i>t</i>

Vowel	Name	Transliteration
_	<i>pataḥ</i>	<i>a</i>
ַ	<i>qameš</i>	<i>a</i>
ֶ ַ	final <i>qameš hê</i>	<i>â</i>
ײַ ַ	3 ms suff.	<i>ayw</i>
ֿ	<i>segol</i>	<i>e</i>
ֹ	<i>serê</i>	<i>e</i>
ױ ֹ	<i>serê yôd</i>	<i>ê</i> ( װ = êy)
ױ ֿ	<i>segol yod</i>	<i>ê</i> ( װֿ = êy)
יְ	short <i>hîreq</i>	<i>i</i>
יִ	long <i>hîreq</i>	<i>i</i>
ײַ יִ	<i>hîreq yôd</i>	<i>î</i> ( װֿ = îy)
וּ ַ	<i>qameš ḥatûp</i>	<i>o</i>
וֹ	<i>holem</i>	<i>o</i>
ׁ וֹ	full <i>holem</i>	<i>ô</i>
ׂ	short <i>qibbûš</i>	<i>u</i>
׃ ׂ	long <i>qibbûš</i>	<i>u</i>
ׄ ׂ	<i>šûreq</i>	<i>û</i>
ׇ ַ	<i>ḥatep qameš</i>	<i>o</i>
׈ ַ	<i>ḥatep pataḥ</i>	<i>a</i>
׉ ֿ	<i>ḥatep segol</i>	<i>e</i>
׊ ֿ	vocal šewa <sup>3</sup>	<i>e</i>

## **Appendix E**

### **Abbreviations of BHS**

#### **Latin Words and Abbreviations**

	<u>Abbreviation</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
<b>A</b>	add	added; an addition
	al	others
	an	or
<b>C</b>	c	with
	cf	compare
	cj	connect
	cop	copula
<b>E</b>	et	and
	ex	from, out of
<b>F</b>	frt	perhaps
<b>G</b>	gl	gloss
<b>H</b>	huc	to this place; hither
<b>I</b>	ins	insert
	invers	order inverted
<b>L</b>	l	read; a reading
<b>M</b>	mlt	very many (manuscripts)



<b>N</b>	numerus	number
<b>O</b>	ordinat	order, arrangement
<b>P</b>	pc pl pr prb prp	a few (manuscripts) plural instead of probably propose; it has been proposed
<b>S</b>	Seb  sg sic suff stich	Sebir, Sebirin: a note in the margin indicating the usual word or form when the text is unusual. singular thus, so suffix stich or colon
<b>T</b>	tr tot	transpose whole
<b>U</b>	ut	as well as; as
<b>V</b>	vel	or

### **Signs**

+	it adds, they add
>	is wanting in, is absent in
*	the form of the word is a probable hypothesis
'	et cetera, and so forth

### **Manuscripts and Versions**

℣	A reading of one or several Hebrew manuscripts from the Cairo Geniza
Ed, Edd	One or several editions of the HB by Kennicott, de Rossi, and Ginsburg
Just	Justin

L	Leningrad Codex of the HB
ℳ	Masoretic Text of the HB
Ms, Mss	One or several medieval manuscripts of the HB
Pap Nash	Nash Papyrus
Q	A reading of one or several manuscripts from Qumran
℣	Samaritan Pentateuch
Ⲛ	Septuagint
Ⲛ*	Original Greek text of the Septuagint
Ⲛ <sup>A</sup>	Codex Alexandrinus
Ⲛ <sup>B</sup>	Codex Vaticanus
Ⲛ <sup>L</sup>	Lucianic recension. These are biblical quotations in other writers identified as coming from Lucian
Ⲛ <sup>Ms(s)</sup>	A manuscript or manuscripts of the Septuagint
Ⲛ <sup>O</sup>	Origen's revision of the Septuagint
Ⲛ <sup>-O</sup>	Greek tradition except for Origen
Ⲛ <sup>R</sup>	Codex Veronensis. Greek and Old Latin version of the Psalms.
σ'	Symmachus' Greek translation of the HB
ⲥ	Syriac version of the HB
ⲧ	Targum(s)
ⲧ <sup>J</sup>	Targum Jonathan
ⲧ <sup>Ms(s)</sup>	A manuscript or manuscripts of the Targums
ⲧ <sup>P</sup>	Palestinian Targum
ⲟ	Vulgate
ⲟ <sup>Ms(s)</sup>	A manuscript or manuscripts of the Vulgate

### **Hebrew Scriptures**

Ex	Exodus
1 R	1 Kings
1 Ch	1 Chronicles

### **Books of the New Testament**

Lc	Luke
Act	Acts
Rm	Romans



## **Appendix F**

### **Selected Bibliographies**

#### **Word Studies**

- Barr, James. *The Semantics of Biblical Language*. Oxford: Oxford University, 1961.
- Brown, Francis, S. R. Driver, and Charles A. Briggs, eds. *A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1907.
- Landes, George M. *Building Your Biblical Hebrew Vocabulary: Learning Words by Frequency and Cognate*. Atlanta, GA: Scholars, 2001.
- Mitchell, Larry A. *A Student's Vocabulary for Biblical Hebrew and Aramaic*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1984.
- Theological Dictionary of the New Testament*. Edited by Gerhard Kittel and Gerhard Friedrich. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1964–1976.
- Theological Dictionary of the Old Testament*. Edited by G. Johannes Botterweck and Helmer Ringgren. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1981.
- Westermann, Claus and Ernst Jenni, *Theological Lexicon of the Old Testament*. Translated by Mark E. Biddle. Peabody: Hendrickson, 1997.

#### **The Masoretic Text**

- Dotan, Aron. *Biblia Hebraica Leningradensia*. Peabody: Hendrickson, 2001.

- Kelley, Page H, Daniel S. Mynatt, and Timothy G. Crawford. *The Masorah of Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia: Introduction and Annotated Glossary*. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1998.
- Rüger, Hans Peter. *An English Key to the Latin Words and Symbols of Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia*. Stuttgart: German Bible Society, 1985.
- Scott, William R. *A Simplified Guide to BHS\*: Critical Apparatus, Masora, Accents, Unusual Letters & Other Markings*, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition. N. Richland Hills, Texas: BIBAL, 1995.
- Wonneberger, Reinhard. *Understanding BHS: A Manual for the Users of Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia*. Subsidia Biblica, 8. Rome: Editrice Pontificio Biblico, 1990.
- Yeivin, Israel. *Introduction to the Tiberian Masorah*. Translated and edited by E. J. Revell. Masoretic Studies 5. Atlanta: Scholars, 1980.

### **Textual Criticism**

- McCarter, P. K. *Textual Criticism, Recovering the Text of the Hebrew Bible*. Guides to Biblical Scholarship, Old Testament Series. Philadelphia: Fortress, 1986.
- Tov, Emanuel. *Textual Criticism of the Hebrew Bible*, 2<sup>nd</sup> revised edition. Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress, 2001. (This is the definitive work. The other two are introductions.)
- Vasholz, R. I. *Data for the Sigla of the BHS*. Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns, 1983.
- Würthwein, Ernst. *The Text of the Old Testament: An Introduction to the Biblia Hebraica*. Translated by Errol F. Rhodes. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1979.

### Translation

- Minkoff, Harvey. *Approaches to the Bible: The Best of Bible Review. Vol. 1: Composition, Transmission and Language*. Washington, DC: Biblical Archaeology Society, 1994.  
(Particularly Harvey Minkoff, "Concern for the Text versus Concern for the Reader," and "Coarse Language in the Bible: It's Culture Shocking!" 266–284; Marc Brettler, "The Torah, The Prophets and the Writings: A New Jewish Translation," 309–319.)
- Nida, Eugene A. and Charles R. Taber. *The Theory and Practice of Translation*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1969.

### Sources and Editors

- Habel, Norman C. *Literary Criticism of the Old Testament*. Guides to Biblical Scholarship, Old Testament Series. Philadelphia: Fortress, 1971.
- McKenzie, Steven L. "Deuteronomistic History." Pages 160–168 in vol. II of *Anchor Bible Dictionary*. Edited by David Noel Freedman, et al. New York: Doubleday, 1992.

### Genre and Tradition

- Knight, Douglas A. *Rediscovering the Traditions of Israel*. SBLDS 9. Missoula, Montana: Scholars, 1973.
- Koch, Klaus. *The Growth of the Biblical Tradition: The Form-Critical Method*. Translated by S. M. Cupitt. London: Adam & Charles Black, 1969.
- Tucker, Gene M. *Form Criticism of the Old Testament*. Guides to Biblical Scholarship, Old Testament Series. Philadelphia: Fortress, 1971.
- Westermann, Claus. *Basic Forms of Prophetic Speech*. Translated by Hugh Clayton White. London: Lutterworth, 1967.
- . *Praise and Lament in the Psalms*. Translated by Keith R. Crim and Richard N. Soulen. Atlanta: John Knox, 1981.

### **Hebrew Narrative**

- Alter, Robert. *The Art of Biblical Narrative*. New York: Basic Books, 1981.
- Longmann, Tremper, III. *Literary Approaches to Biblical Interpretation*. Foundations of Contemporary Interpretation, vol 3. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1987.
- Muilenburg, James. "Form Criticism and Beyond." *JBL* 88 (1969), 1–18.
- Trible, Phyllis. *Rhetorical Criticism: Content, Method and the Book of Jonah*. Guides to Biblical Scholarship, Old Testament Series. Minneapolis: Fortress, 1994.

### **Hebrew Poetry**

- Alter, Robert. *The Art of Biblical Poetry*. New York: Basic Books, 1985.
- Berlin, Adele. *The Dynamics of Biblical Parallelism*. Bloomington: Indiana University, 1985.
- Kugel, James L. *The Idea of Biblical Poetry: Parallelism and Its History*. New Haven: Yale, 1981.
- Miller, Patrick D., Jr. "Poetry and Interpretation." Pages 29–47 in *Interpreting the Psalms*. Philadelphia: Fortress, 1986.
- Petersen, David L. and Kent Harold Richards. *Interpreting Hebrew Poetry*. Guides to Biblical Scholarship, Old Testament Series. Minneapolis: Fortress, 1992.

### **Hebrew Reference Grammars**

- Blau, Joshua. *A Grammar of Biblical Hebrew*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. Porta Linguarium, Band 12. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 1993.
- Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar*. Edited and enlarged by E. Kautsch. 2<sup>nd</sup> English edition by A. E. Cowley. Oxford: Clarendon, 1910.
- Joüon, Paul, S. J. *A Grammar of Biblical Hebrew*. Translated and revised by T. Muraoka. 2 vols. Subsidia Biblica, 14. Roma: Editrice Pontificio Istituto Biblico, 1993.

- Lambdin, Thomas O. *Introduction to Biblical Hebrew*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1971.
- Waltke, Bruce K. & M. O'Connor. *An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax*. Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1990.
- Williams, Ronald J. *Hebrew Syntax: An Outline*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. Toronto: University of Toronto, 1976.

### Exegesis

- Alexander, Patrick H. *et al.*, eds. *The SBL Handbook of Style: For Ancient Near Eastern, Biblical and Early Christian Studies*. Peabody: Hendrickson, 1999.
- Gorman, Michael J. *Elements of Biblical Exegesis: A Basic Guide for Students and Ministers*. Peabody: Hendrickson, 2001.
- Harrington, Daniel. *Interpreting the Old Testament*. Old Testament Message, vol. 1. Wilmington, Delaware: Michael Glazier, 1981.
- Hayes, John H. and Carl R. Holladay. *Biblical Exegesis: A Beginner's Handbook*. Revised edition. Atlanta: John Knox, 1987.
- McKenzie, Steven L. and Stephen R. Haynes, eds. *To Each Its Own Meaning: An Introduction to Biblical Criticisms and Their Application*. Revised and expanded. Louisville: Westminster/John Knox, 1999.
- Steck, Odil Hannes. *Old Testament Exegesis: A Guide to the Methodology*. 2<sup>nd</sup> edition translated by James D. Nogalski. SBL Resources for Biblical Study 39. Atlanta: Scholars, 1998.
- Stuart, Douglas. *Old Testament Exegesis: A Primer for Students and Pastors*. Revised edition. Philadelphia: Westminster, 1984.
- Tiffany, Frederick C. and Sharon H. Ringe. *Biblical Interpretation: A Roadmap*. Nashville: Abingdon, 1996.





## Index

### A

absolute, 75  
accents, 68, 69  
    conjunctive, 71  
    disjunctive, 70  
    three books, 69  
    twenty-one books, 69  
active, 58  
additions, 97  
adjective, 105  
    absolute, 106  
    attributive, 105  
    predicate, 106  
    used as noun, 106  
affix conjugation, 89  
affixes, 84  
affirmatives, 84  
ʾaleph, 30, 50  
alliteration, 214  
alphabet, 9–10  
announcements  
    of judgment, 169  
    of salvation, 169  
antonyms, 38  
Aramaic, 13  
aspect, 59  
assonance, 214

### B

BaK Pak, 11  
BDB, 12, 35  
BeGaD KePhaT, 20–21  
*BHS*, 68, 95, 233  
bicola, 211

### C

cause or result clauses, 186  
chiasmus, 192, 214  
classes of vowels, 16  
codex, 68  
cohortative, 157  
    negation of, 160  
cola, 211  
colon, 211  
concordance, 38  
conjugation, 48  
conjunction –ך, 29  
consonants, 9  
construct, 75  
    indicators of, 76  
    meaning of, 77

### D

dagesh, 10, 20  
    strong, 20, 27  
    weak, 20, 21  
dagesh *forte*, 20

*DCH*, 35  
 declarative, 152  
 definite, 76  
 definite article, 27, 28, 62  
 demonstrative  
     attributive, 45  
     far, 44  
     near, 44  
     predicate, 44  
 denominative, 134  
 dentals, 207  
 Deuteronomistic  
     History (DH), 144  
 Deuteronomists (Dtr), 144  
 dictionary, 12  
 direct object, 51  
 Disjunctive  $\text{—}^{\text{ל}}$ , 163  
 distich, 211  
 dittography, 97  
 Documentary Hypothesis, 143  
 doubling, 21, 27, 28, 52  
 dynamic, 58–59, 89, 121, 193, 233

## E

emendation, 102  
 etymology, 37  
 exegesis, 5, 34  
 external criteria, 100

## F

factive, 134  
 fientive, 58  
 final forms, 10  
 form criticism, 167  
 freiwillig, 58  
 frequentative, 134  
 furtive *pataḥ*, 20

## G

gaps, 192  
 geminate, 80

gender, 24, 33, 41, 48, 105, 124  
 genre, 167  
 genre criticism, 167  
 GKC, 226  
 glosses, 97  
 gutturals, 19–20, 27, 62

## H

hireq, 18  
 ḥolem, 16  
 HALOT, 35  
 haplography, 99  
 harmonizations, 100  
 Hiphil, 222  
     form of, 127, 137  
     meaning of, 128  
 Hishtaphel, 207  
 Hitpaël, 205  
 Hitpolel, 223  
 homoioarkton, 100  
 homoioteleuton, 99  
 Hophal, 216  
 hymns, 170

## I

I-<sup>2</sup>aleph, 54  
*IBHS*, 226  
 idiom, 123  
 imperative, 154  
     long form, 161  
 imperfect, 48  
     meaning of, 59–61  
     negation, 61–62  
     negation of, 160  
 inclusio, 192, 214  
 inclusive language, 125  
 indefinite, 75  
 indefinite article, 27  
 indicators, xvii, 6, 8, 38, 49, 50,  
     52, 53, 63, 66, 76, 84, 85, 86, 90,  
     91, 115, 118, 127, 128, 132, 133,

137, 138, 149, 154, 155, 156,  
157, 161, 162, 174, 179, 182,  
195, 198, 199, 200, 204, 205,  
215, 216, 218, 220, 221, 222  
infinitive  
    Hiphil, 195  
    Piel, 195  
infinitive absolute  
    as an imperative, 195  
    use and meaning, 194  
infinitive construct  
    as a noun, 187  
    modal, 186  
    use and meaning, 184  
infixing tav, 205  
inflection, 48  
internal criteria, 101  
interrogative particle, 54  
intransitive, 58

## **J**

JEDP, 143  
Joüon, 226  
jussive, 153  
    negation of, 160

## **K**

KBL, 35  
Kethiv, 73

## **L**

laments, 170  
law  
    absolute, 168  
    conditional, 168  
Leitwort, 191  
Leningrad Codex, 68  
lexicons, 12, 35  
locative he<sup>2</sup>, 149

## **M**

manuscripts, 96  
mappiq, 20, 42  
maqquph, 28, 51, 72, 76, 156, 182  
markers, 16  
marking, 24  
Masora, 72  
    magna, 73  
    parva, 72  
Masoretes, 16, 17, 20, 68, 69, 72,  
    73, 74  
Masoretic Text, 68  
matres lectionis, 16, 21  
metaphor, 214  
metathesis, 206  
meteg, 85  
middle, 201  
missing letters, 51, 80, 206  
mood, 60  
MT, 68

## **N**

narrative, 189  
narrative criticism, 189  
narrative sequence, 59  
Niphal, 198, 222  
nouns, 24  
    collective, 26  
    dual, 25  
    feminine plural, 25  
    feminine singular, 24  
    finding in BDB, 78  
    irregular plurals, 24  
    masculine form, 25  
    masculine plural, 24  
    masculine singular, 24  
number, 24, 41, 48, 105  
numbers  
    cardinal, 109  
    ordinal, 109, 111

## O

Old Hebrew scripts, 99  
omissions, 99

## P

parablepsis, 99  
paradigm, 48  
parallelism  
    antithetic, 211  
parallelism  
    synonymous, 211  
    synthetic, 212  
partially dynamic, 59  
partially stative, 59  
participle  
    as a noun, 176  
    as a predicate adjective, 176  
    as an attributive adjective, 176  
    Hiphil, 179  
    in construct, 177  
    passive, 175  
    Piel, 179  
    Qal, 174  
    stative, 174  
    use and meaning of, 176  
particle  
    נָּ, 162  
passive, 201  
pause, 72  
Pentateuch, 69, 74, 101, 142–43, 168  
perfect  
    meaning of, 89  
perfective conjugation, 89  
perpetual Qere, 73  
person, 41, 48  
PGN, 48  
Piel  
    cohortative, 161  
    form of, 133, 149  
    imperative, 161

    jussive, 161  
    meaning of, 133  
Pilpel, 223  
plot, 189  
plural for honor, 27  
Polpal, 223  
possessive, 43  
predicate, 106  
prefix, 48  
prefix conjugation, 60  
preposition  
    בְּ, 62  
prepositions, 28  
    independent, 28  
    prefixed, 28  
preterite, 60  
printing, 11  
privative, 134  
pronouns, 41  
    independent, 41  
    personal, 41  
    suffixed, 63–64, 78  
Pual, 215  
purpose or result clauses, 163

## Q

qamets, 18  
qamets hatuph, 18  
Qere, 73  
qibbuts, 18  
quiescent, 19

## R

reciprocal, 201  
redaction criticism, 144  
redactors, 144  
reflexive, 201  
resh, 27, 62, 216  
retroversion, 96  
rhetorical criticism, 191

## root

נָתַן, 90

root meaning, 12

roots, 12

doubly weak, 54, 250, 253

hollow, 53, 66, 80, 90, 154,  
156, 175, 179, 184, 200, 216,  
217, 223hollow. *See* II-vav or yodI-<sup>3</sup>aleph, 154I-guttural, 54, 138, 154, 199,  
245, 247, 249, 251, 252, 253,  
255, 257II-guttural, 115, 132, 154, 161,  
180, 195, 206, 216, 245, 247,  
249, 251, 252, 255III-<sup>3</sup>aleph, 199, 244, 246, 248,  
250, 252, 254III-guttural, 50, 138, 162, 199,  
244, 246, 248, 250, 252, 254,  
256III-he<sup>2</sup>, 52, 54, 80, 85, 118, 127,  
132, 133, 138, 153, 156, 157,  
159, 162, 175, 180, 183, 194,  
195, 196, 199, 206, 207, 209,  
216, 217, 222, 244, 246, 248,  
250, 252, 254, 256

III-nun, 90

II-nun, 81

II-resh, 195

II-vav, 13, 52, 53, 90, 138, 153,  
194, 222, 223, 244, 246, 248,  
250, 254, 256, 258II-vav or yod, 52, 128, 138, 157,  
198–99, 223II-yod, 53, 90, 138, 153, 194,  
223, 258I-nun, 52, 128, 137, 138, 155,  
157, 162, 183, 196, 198, 199,  
216, 217, 221, 222, 245, 247,  
249, 251, 252, 255, 257I-vav, 52–53, 81, 128, 137, 138,  
155, 157, 179, 183, 196, 198,  
199, 200, 206, 209, 216, 217,  
221, 222, 245, 247, 249, 251,  
252, 255, 257I-yod, 53, 81, 128, 137, 138,  
157, 179, 204, 206, 209, 216,  
245, 249, 255, 257

three-letter, 12

## S

Semitic languages, 36, 37

Septuagint, 39

sheva, 18

rule of, 29, 30, 154, 185

silent, 19, 20

vocal, 19, 20

sibilants, 206

sigla, 100

sign of the definite direct  
object, 51

simile, 214

sneaky patah, 20

source criticism, 141

spelling

defective, 21

full, 21

spirant, 20

spirants, 10

stanza, 213

statives, 50, 58, 85, 90, 201

stems

meaning of, 116

stich, 211

stops, 10, 20, 21

stress, 17

style, 146

subject, 51, 84

suffix, 49

suffixed pronouns, 63, 64, 78, 84,  
91, 133, 174

- on infinitive construct, 186
- on participles, 176
- suffixes, 84
- suffixes of the perfect, 85
- syllable, 17
  - closed, 17
  - open, 17
  - stressed, 17
  - unstressed, 17
- synonyms, 38

## T

- TDNT*, 39, 233
- TDOT*, 39, 233
- temporal clauses, 184
- text, 96
- text-critical apparatus, 96
- text-critical note, 96
- Theological Dictionaries, 39
- tolerative, 201
- transitive, 58
- translation
  - audience-oriented, 121, 123
  - dynamic, 121
  - dynamic-equivalence, 123
  - equivalence, 121
  - formal correspondence, 121, 122
  - idiomatic, 121, 123
  - literal, 121
  - text-oriented, 121
  - theories of, 121
- transposition, 99

- tricola, 211
- tristich, 211

## V

- vav consecutive, 50, 86
- vav conversive, 50, 59
- verbs, 48
  - charting, 54
  - finite, 174
  - infinite, 174
- versions, 39, 96
- volitional, 152
- voluntaria, 58
- vowel points, 16, 21, 31, 68, 73–74, 213
- vowels, 9, 18
  - classes of, 16
  - letters, 16
  - long, 18
  - markers, 16
  - short, 18

## W

- wayyiqṭol*, 50
- weak letters, 51
- word order, 51
- word study, 34

## Y

- yaqtul*, 60
- yaqtulu*, 60